

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 830N.

- For proper handset use, read this guide.
- Keep this guide in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 830N is compatible with 3G network technology.

Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Content of this guide is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52) about unclear or missing information.

Download the latest edition of this guide from SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website.
<http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/r/support/830n/>

Before Using This Guide

- SoftBank 830N is referred to as "handset" in this guide.
 - Most operation descriptions are based on default settings and begin in Standby.
 - Sample screenshots* are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
 - Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.
 - "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or services which require Japanese ability to use.
- * Standby Display used in this guide is based on SoftBank 830N Glitter Orange model. Design theme of Main Menu and windows is based on default setting *Gallery*.

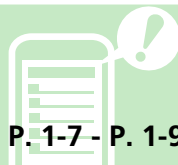
	Getting Started	1
	Basic Operations	2
	Calling	3
	Security	4
	Mail	5
	Internet	6
	Camera	7
	TV	8
	Music Player & S! Appli	9
	Entertainment	10
	Tools	11
	Data Management	12
	Connectivity	13
	Customization	14
	Appendix	15

Search Guide

●Function & Service Name Search

Table of Contents	P. viii
Menu List	P. 15-19
Index	P. 15-39

●Display Indicators



●Learning Basics

P. 2-2 - P. 2-9

●Solving Problems

Troubleshooting	P. 15-6
Warranty & After Sales Service	P. 15-51

●Objective Search



Mastering
Basics

My Number &
E-mail Address

Customizing
Handset

830N Features

SoftBank Mobile
Features

Basic Operations Learn basic menu navigation and key operations. P. 2-2	Text Entry Enter text for composing messages, creating Phone Book entries, etc. P. 2-12	Messaging Services Use S! Mail or SMS to send text messages. Attach and send files via S! Mail. P. 5-2	Mobile Internet Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers. P. 6-2
My Phone Number Check your phone number on handset. P. 1-22	My Account Details Save your contact information to Account Details to send it to your friends. P. 1-22	Customize E-mail Address Change the account name (part before @) of your e-mail address. P. 14-22	Exchange Information Wirelessly Send your e-mail address to compatible devices via infrared. P. 13-2
Download Music Download songs from Chaku-Uta® sites and set as ringtones or play back on Music Player. P. 9-4	Set Ringtones Set your favorite songs as ringtones. P. 14-10	Wallpaper Set your favorite image to appear in Standby with clock or calendar. P. 14-4	Add Shortcuts Add frequently used functions to Desktop Icons. P. 2-5
Music Player Download songs and play them on handset. P. 9-2	Camera & Video Camera Shoot still images and videos. P. 7-2	TV Handset supports One Seg Digital TV. P. 8-2	Osaifu-Keitai® Use your handset for payment of purchases with electronic money or as a commuter ticket or point card. P. 11-2
Yahoo! Keitai Sites A special portal site for SoftBank handsets enhances your Internet browsing experience. P. 6-3	Graphic Mail Create HTML messages by changing font and background colors, inserting images, etc. P. 5-4	Gaming Device Play S! Appli games downloaded from Yahoo! Keitai sites. P. 9-8	S! Quick News Subscribe to News and receive automatic updates regularly. P. 10-5

Intellectual Property Rights

- Duplicating, modifying or publicly transmitting copyright-protected contents (e.g. text, images, music, software) photographed or downloaded from websites without the permission of the copyright holders is prohibited by copyright laws, with the exception that the duplication or quotation of those is made only for personal use.

Shooting or recording a demonstration, performance or exhibition may be prohibited in some cases even if it is for personal use.

Shooting a photo of a person using this product without his or her permission, or posting a photo of a person you shot on websites without his or her permission may constitute an infringement of portrait rights.

- Mobile Widget, S! Appli, S! Mail, PC Site Browser and Graphic Mail are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- SOFTBANK, SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc. in the US.
- Osaifu-Keitai® is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773
5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073
5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196
5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754
5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338

- T9® is trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.



- The microSD™ logo and microSDHC™ logo are trademarks.



- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:
 - To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
 - To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
 - To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LA

When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.

- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ Player under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.



Copyright© 1995 - 2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved.

Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.

- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002 - 2009 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



- Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc. in Japan and/or other countries.

- This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO., LTD.



ACCESS, ACCESS logo and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and other countries.

©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

- This product is equipped with IrFront by ACCESS CO., LTD.
©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.



- Bluetooth and the Bluetooth logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. NEC Corporation is granted a license for their use from Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



- Multitask, Privacy Angle, Life History Viewer, Quick Info, Desktop info, Quick Album, Word Prediction, Tomo-Den and Tomomato-Mail BOX are trademarks or registered trademarks of NEC Corporation.

- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ MASCOT CAPSULE® are registered trademarks of HI CORPORATION.

- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.

- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.

- Hyper Clear Voice is commercially available based on the license for SRS VIP+ technology from SRS Labs, Inc. SRS, VIP+, and the (●) symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.

- TruMedia and Dialog Clarity technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.



Trumedia, Dialog Clarity, SRS and the (●) symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.

- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

For more details, visit "GPL・LGPL等について" at <http://www.n-keitai2.com/guide/download/>

- FrameSolid™ by Morpho, Inc. is used for the frame interpolation function.

FrameSolid™ is a registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.

Intellectual Property Rights

- This product is equipped with the font FontAvenue product by NEC Corporation.
- BookSurfing is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc., and INFOCITY, Inc.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Media® and Windows Vista® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Microsoft Windows Operating System is indicated in its abbreviated form as Windows.
- OS (Japanese) are abbreviated as follows in this guide.
 - Windows Vista is an abbreviation of Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).
 - Windows XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
 - Windows 2000 is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- This product is antibacterial-coated.
Antibacterial part: Handset body (excluding Display, keys and terminals)
Inorganic antimicrobial agent, coating: JP0122112A0003N
The SIAA logo indicates the quality control and information disclosure for this product conform to the guidelines of the Society of Industrial



- Technology for Antimicrobial Articles, as a result of evaluations conducted under ISO 22196.
- ©ATR-Trek Co., Ltd.
- ©赤塚不二夫／ぴえろ
- ©TOMY
- ©2006 タカラトミー /KL/H
- ©SUGAR
- TM&©2008 Felix the Cat Productions, Inc. All Rights Reserved
- ©DAIKIN.H.T., 2000
- ©T2i Entertainment
- The other company names and brand names described in this guide are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Table of Contents

Before Using This Guide.....	i
Search Guide	ii
Intellectual Property Rights	iv
Table of Contents	viii
Package Contents	x
Safety Precautions.....	xi
General Notes	xxiv

1 Getting Started

Handset Parts	1-2
Display	1-7
USIM Card	1-10
Battery & Charger	1-14
Power On/Off	1-18
Mobile Manners.....	1-20
Codes	1-21
Other Basic Information	1-22

2 Basic Operations

Menu Operations.....	2-2
Multitask	2-10
Text Entry	2-12
Phone Book	2-21
S! Addressbook Back-up	2-28
Advanced Features	2-30

3 Calling

Overview	3-2
Voice Call	3-3
Video Call	3-7
Call Logs	3-10
Speed Dial	3-12
Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming).....	3-13
Optional Services.....	3-14
Advanced Features	3-16

4 Security

PIN Settings.....	4-2
Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use	4-3
Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls	4-7
Setting Secret Data.....	4-8

5 Mail

Overview	5-2
Sending Messages	5-3

Receiving & Opening Messages.....	5-7
Handling Messages	5-10
Advanced Features.....	5-16

6 Internet

Overview.....	6-2
Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
PC Site Browser	6-5
Page Operations	6-8
Bookmarks & Saved Pages...	6-11
Advanced Features.....	6-13

7 Camera

Overview.....	7-2
Capturing Still Images	7-5
Recording Videos.....	7-7
Various Camera Features	7-10
Advanced Features.....	7-13

8 TV

About TV	8-2
Initial Setup.....	8-5

Watching TV	8-6
Recording/Playing	
Programs	8-10
View/Record Timer	8-12
Advanced Features	8-14

9 Music Player & S! Appli

About Music Player	9-2
Music Playback	9-5
S! Appli	9-8
Advanced Features	9-10

10 Entertainment

Mobile Widget	10-2
S! Quick News	10-5
S! Info Channel	10-6
Books	10-8
Advanced Features	10-9

11 Tools

Osaifu-Keitai®	11-2
Life History Viewer	11-6

Schedule	11-8
To Do List	11-11
Text Memo	11-13
Voice Memo	11-14
Calculator	11-15
Alarm	11-16
Bar Code Reader	11-18
Text Reader	11-20
Advanced Features	11-23

12 Data Management

About Data Folder	12-2
Accessing Files	12-3
Editing Files	12-8
File & Folder Management ...	12-10
About Memory Card	12-11
Managing Memory Cards ...	12-12
Advanced Features	12-15

13 Connectivity

Infrared	13-2
Bluetooth®	13-5
PC Connection	13-9
Advanced Features	13-11

14 Customization

Clock, Display & Sounds	14-2
Phone Book & Calls	14-16
Mail	14-21
Internet	14-25
TV	14-27
Camera	14-31
Player & S! Appli	14-33
Entertainment	14-35
Other Settings	14-38

15 Appendix

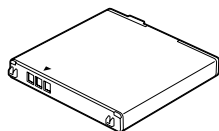
Multitask Combinations	15-2
Software Update	15-4
Troubleshooting	15-6
Text Entry Key	
Assignments	15-10
Kuten Code List	15-13
Menu List	15-19
Specifications	15-34
Index	15-39
Warranty & After Sales	
Service	15-51
Customer Service	15-52

Package Contents

The following items are included in the package with handset.

For additional information on accessories, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).

■ Battery (NEBAL1)



■ Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (NELAH1)



■ Starter Guide

■ Warranty (Handset)

- SoftBank 830N supports microSD™ and microSDHC™ memory cards. Purchase a memory card to use related functions.
- Use only specified AC charger (sold separately) to charge handset.

Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper use of your handset, read these safety precautions carefully before use. Keep this guide for future reference.
- Observe these safety precautions to prevent injuries and damages to property.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss or damages incurred by you or a third party as a result of missed calls, etc., due to malfunction, erroneous operation or failure of this product.

■ Labels

- Risks of injury or damage from improper use are categorized by levels. Understand these labels before reading this guide.

 DANGER	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 WARNING	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 CAUTION	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

■ Symbols

- Make sure to understand the following symbols and precautions before reading this guide.

	Action is prohibited.
	Disassembly is prohibited.
	Wetting the product is prohibited.
	Handling with wet hands is prohibited.
	Action is compulsory.
	Unplug power cord.

Safety Precautions

■ **Handset, Battery, USIM Card, AC Charger (Sold Separately), Memory Card (Not Included), & Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable**



DANGER



Use SoftBank specified devices (Battery, AC Charger, etc.) only.

Use of non-specified devices may cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, or malfunction.



Do not disassemble/modify/solder handset.

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Also, Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite. Modification of telephone equipment violates statutory regulations and is subject to penalty.



Keep liquids away from handset.

If handset and/or battery is not dried after exposure to fluids (water, pet urine etc.), overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, etc. may occur.



Do not charge, use, or leave handset in places subject to high temperatures (near an open flame or heating equipment, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day).

May cause deformation or malfunction; or may cause Battery to leak, overheat, ignite, or rupture. Also, the outer housing may become hot resulting in burns.

Stop vehicle in a safe location (where parking is allowed) before using handset.



Do not use excessive force to attach Battery or connect AC Charger to handset. Battery or AC Charger may be the wrong way around.

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

WARNING



Do not place handset, Battery, AC Charger, or Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable in a microwave oven or pressure cooker, or on top of an induction heating (IH) cooktop.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause handset/AC Charger to overheat, emit smoke, ignite, or malfunction.



Turn off handset when entering gas stations or other places where flammable gases (propane gas, gasoline, etc.) generate. Do not charge battery in such places.

Gases may ignite.
Before using a mobile phone with Osaifu-Keitai® inside a gas station, be sure to turn it off. (If IC card lock is activated, first deactivate it and turn power off.)



Do not drop or throw handset or expose it to excessive shock.

May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause fire, electric shock, or malfunction.



If you notice an unusual sound, odor, smoke, etc. while using, charging or storing handset, immediately do the following:

1. Unplug AC Charger from outlet.
 2. Turn handset power off.
 3. Remove Battery from handset, being careful of burn or injury.
- Continuing use may cause fire or electric shock.



Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) and conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments or metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) away from External Device Port and Memory Card Slot.

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire or malfunction.

CAUTION



Do not place handset on a sloping or unstable surface.

May cause handset to fall resulting in injury or malfunction. Take particular care when vibrator is activated.



Keep handset out of reach of infants.

Failing to do so may result in small parts being accidentally swallowed, or may cause injury.



When a child uses handset, it is recommended that a parent provide proper instructions to the child and keep an eye on how the child uses handset.

Failing to do so may cause injury, etc.



Do not store handset in humid or dusty places or in places subject to high temperatures.

May cause malfunction.



Be careful not to pinch your fingers in the hinge when opening handset.

Failing to do so may cause injury.

Handling Battery

DANGER

- Properly use and dispose of Battery after checking its type as displayed on the label on Battery.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion



Do not throw Battery into a fire.

May cause Battery to leak, rupture or ignite.



Do not puncture Battery with a nail, hit it with a hammer, step on it, or subject it to strong impact.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

	Do not let metal objects (pins, etc.) come in contact with Battery Terminals. Do not carry or store conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments or metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) together with Battery. May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite.
	If battery fluid gets into your eyes, immediately rinse your eyes with clean water without rubbing them, and consult a doctor. Failing to do so may result in losing your eyesight.

WARNING

	If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, immediately stop using and rinse the fluid off with clean water. Battery fluid may injure your skin.
---	---

	If Battery is not fully charged after the specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging it. If you continue charging, Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.
	If you notice an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration, deformation, etc. while using, charging or storing Battery, remove it from handset being careful of burn or injury, and keep it away from fire. Continuing use may cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.
	If Battery leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop using it and keep it away from fire. Battery fluid is flammable and could ignite causing fire or could rupture.
	If an abnormality in Battery from external impact (deformed or scratched from dropping) is visible, immediately discontinue use. May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.

Safety Precautions



Do not allow pets to bite Battery.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.



CAUTION



Do not dispose of batteries as municipal waste.

Bring used batteries to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape.

Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.

■ Handling Handset



WARNING



Do not use while operating a vehicle (car, motorcycle, bicycle, etc.)

May cause a traffic accident.

Use of a mobile phone while driving is prohibited by law, and is subject to penalty.

Stop vehicle in a safe location (where parking is allowed) before using handset.



Keep handset power off near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals.

Failing to do so may interfere with the device operation.

* Examples of such devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.

	Keep handset power off aboard an aircraft. Disable auto power-on functions (such as the alarm function) before turning off handset. May jeopardize safety of the airplane. Handset operation aboard an airplane is prohibited by law and subject to penalty.	 Keep handset away from your ear when calling in handsfree mode. When playing games or music with Earphone-Microphone connected to handset, adjust the volume properly. If the volume is too high, it may impair your hearing. If surrounding sounds cannot be heard clearly, it may result in an accident.
	If you have a weak heart, be careful with incoming call vibrator and ring volume settings. These may affect your heart.	 Do not place handset on the dashboard close to airbags. In case of airbag inflation, handset may hit passengers resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.
	If thunder is heard outside, retract Antenna, immediately turn handset power off and move to a safe place. Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock.	 If Display or Camera Lens is damaged, be careful of broken glass pieces or exposed internal components. The Display's reinforced glass prevents shattering; however touching broken glass edges and exposed pieces may cause injury.
	Do not point infrared beam at anyone's eyes. May cause eye injury.	 Do not allow fluids such as water, metal pieces or flammable materials to enter USIM Card Slot or microSD™ Memory Card Slot. May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.
	If you use electronic medical equipment, do not place handset in breast pocket or inner coat pocket. Using handset near electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.	



CAUTION



If handset affects car electronics, stop use.

Handset use may affect electronics in some car models and impair safe driving.



If skin abnormality occurs with use of handset, immediately discontinue use and consult a doctor.

Handset contains metal material. Depending on your physical condition, you may experience itchiness, rash, etc.



Keep magnetic cards away from handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing handset.

Failing to do so may cause magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.



Do not swing handset by Antenna, Strap, etc.

Handset may strike you or people around you, or the strap may break, resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.



Use caution when using handset for an extended period as handset may become hot, especially in high-temperature conditions.

Skin contact for extended period may cause low-temperature burns.



Do not bring speaker close to the ear when making calls in handsfree mode or when ring tone/melody is playing.

May impair your hearing.



Be careful not to pinch your fingers or Strap when opening and closing handset.

May cause injury or damage.



Watch TV with adequate lighting and distance from Display.

May contribute to impaired eyesight.



Do not turn volume up too high when using earphones.

Using earphones for extended periods at high volume may impair hearing or harm your ears.

	If Display breaks do not inhale or touch liquid crystal. If liquid crystal enters your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse with clean water and consult a doctor. If liquid crystal adheres to your skin or clothing, immediately wipe off with alcohol and wash with soap and water. May result in losing your eyesight or harming your skin.
	Do not use in crowded locations. Antenna may hit other persons causing injury.
	Do not use Antenna if broken. May cause burns or injuries upon skin contact.
	Keep magnetized objects away from handset. May cause operation errors.

■ Handling USIM Card



CAUTION



Be careful handling the Notch when removing USIM Card (IC chip).

May injure your hands or fingers.

■ Handling AC Charger



WARNING



Do not place Charger on a sloping or unstable surface during charging.

May cause handset to fall resulting in malfunction.



Do not cover with clothing or bedding during charging.

Heat may build up resulting in fire or malfunction.

Safety Precautions

	Use the specified power supply and voltage. Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction. AC Charger: 100 to 240 V AC (for household AC outlets only) Also, do not use commercially available transformer for travel use. May cause fire, electric shock, or malfunction.		When plugging AC Charger into outlet, keep conductive materials (pencil lead, metal parts, necklaces, hair pins, etc.) away from AC Charger plug/terminals and plug Charger firmly into outlet. Failing to do so may cause electric shock, shorting, fire, or other dangers.
	Hold and unplug AC Charger from outlet if handset is not used for an extended period of time. Failing to do so may cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.		Do not touch AC Charger with wet hands. May cause electric shock or malfunction.
	If liquid (water, pet urine, etc.) gets into AC Charger, immediately unplug AC Charger from outlet. Failing to do so may cause electric shock, smoke emission or fire.		If thunder is heard, do not touch AC Charger. May cause electric shock.
	If dust or dirt has gotten on the plug, hold and unplug AC Charger from outlet and wipe off with a dry cloth. Failing to do so may cause fire.		Do not use AC Charger if the cord is damaged. May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.
			Do not use AC Charger in humid places such as in bathrooms. May cause electric shock.

	Do not short-circuit Charger Terminals when Charger is plugged into an outlet. Do not touch Charger Terminals with your fingers, etc. May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.
	Do not place heavy objects on the cord of AC Charger. May cause electric shock or fire.

CAUTION

	When AC Charger is connected to an outlet, do not pull on cord or otherwise subject Charger to strong shock. May cause injury or malfunction.
	Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger from outlet before cleaning. Failing to do so may cause electric shock.
	Do not unplug AC Charger by pulling the cord. Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger. Pulling the cord may damage the cord resulting in electric shock or fire.
	Do not charge a wet battery. May cause battery to overheat, ignite or rupture.
 	Unplug Charger from outlet when charging is finished. Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction.

Safety Precautions

■ Near Electronic Medical Equipment

- The following information conforms to “The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment” (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, April 1997), as well as refers to “The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment” (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

WARNING



If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, carry and use handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted area.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.



When using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers/defibrillators outside of medical institutions, consult device manufacturer about the influence of radio waves.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of electronic medical equipment.



Observe the following in medical institutions. Radio waves from handset may affect electronic medical equipment.

- Do not bring mobile phones into an operating room, ICU (Intensive Care Unit) or CCU (Coronary Care Unit).
- Turn off mobile phones in hospital wards. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.
- Turn off mobile phones even in lobbies or areas where use is permitted if there is electronic medical equipment nearby.
- Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use or bring mobile phones into prohibited areas.



Keep handset power off in crowded places such as in packed trains because a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.

General Notes

Usage Basics

- As handset uses radio waves, it cannot be used where signals are weak or when it is out of service area. If you move to a place with poor signal reception (e.g. beside/inside a building, in a tunnel, underground or mountain area), calls may be suddenly cut off.
- Take care not to disturb other people when using handset in public places.
- If you receive a call while walking, move to a safe place before answering.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages arising from loss or alteration of data (Phone Book, images, sound, etc.) stored on your handset or microSD™ memory card as a result of accident or malfunction. Back up important data such as Phone Book entries.
- Handset is a wireless station under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit your handset for inspection based on this law.
- Using handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the operation of these devices. Use handset as far away as possible from these devices.
- Be aware of eavesdropping. Handset employs a digital signal that provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of eavesdropping by a third party using special means cannot be ruled out.
 <Eavesdropping>
 Interception of radio signals by a third party during communication, either intentionally or accidentally
- Do not trap Strap or other objects when opening and closing handset. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage handset.
- Display has a protective film to ensure safety (prevent shattering) due to breakage if dropped or subjected to impact. Do not forcefully remove or damage this film.
 May cause injury.
- Using handset on trains or other public transportation may, in some rare cases, affect their electronic devices.
- A call may not be connected or you may hear noises:
 - In an extremely cold place (e.g. freezer storehouse) where handset may not operate normally
 - Near metal furniture which may interfere with signal transmission
 - Near electromagnetic sources or magnetized items, including electric products, audio-visual equipment and office appliances (e.g. computer, microwave oven, speaker, TV set, radio, fax machine, fluorescent lamp, word processor, electric kotatsu, inverter-driven air conditioner, electromagnetic cooker)

- Bluetooth devices operate at the same frequencies assigned to licensed in-house radio stations (in factory production lines), specific unlicensed low power radio stations, and licensed amateur radio stations (hereafter, "another radio station") for mobile identification in addition to scientific, medical, or industrial devices (microwave ovens).

- 1 Make sure that "another radio station" is not operating nearby.
- 2 If this equipment interferes with an in-house radio station, immediately change frequency, move to another place or stop transmission, and contact the following for advice (setting up of partitioning, etc.).
- 3 If interference between this equipment and a specific low power radio station or amateur radio station occurs, contact the following.

SoftBank Customer Center From SoftBank handsets 157 (toll-free)

(From any other phones, refer to "Contact" (P. 15-52))

- If Battery appears deformed or scratched from external impact, contact Customer Assistance.
- Keep a backup copy of data saved to handset. SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss of data stored on your handset.
- Do not sit with handset in back pocket of trousers or skirt. Do not place at bottom of bag where handset will be subject to excessive weight. May cause malfunction.
- If you use handset for the first time or after an extended period of disuse, charge Battery before using handset.
- Battery operating time varies by the usage environment and the condition of Battery.
- Do not charge Battery:
 - In a humid, dusty, or shaky place
 - Near a landline phone, TV or radio
- Although AC Charger may become warm while charging, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not subject handset to excessive shock. Do not deform Charger Terminals. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Charge in a location with an ambient temperature within the appropriate range (5 to 35 °C).
- When Battery life nears its end, it may expand slightly. This is not a malfunction.
- Handset's FeliCa reader/writer function uses ultra-weak radio waves not requiring radio licensing. Operates at 13.56 MHz range. Maintain enough distance when using other reader/writers nearby. Be sure to check that other wireless stations operating at the same frequency range are not nearby.
- Keep handset away from strong magnetic force. May cause malfunction.
- Do not scratch Display with metal objects, etc. Doing so may damage Display resulting in malfunction or breakage.

General Notes

- Do not insert sharp/hard objects in earpiece/speaker. May cause malfunction or damage.
- When handset is open, a gap forms between the Display backside and keypad. Keep foreign objects or liquids (water, metal fragments, flammable materials or any other foreign objects) from entering gap.

Inside Cars

- Do not use handset while driving. Doing so may compromise safe driving and cause an accident. Handset operation in a car may be punishable by law.
- Before using handset, stop the car in a safe place.
- Handset use may affect electronics in some car models. Confirm with your car dealer whether sufficient magnetic protection measures are implemented in your car. Failing to do so may compromise safe driving.

Aboard Aircraft

Never use (or even power on) handset on an aircraft. Doing so may compromise flight safety and cause an accident. Handset operation aboard an aircraft may be punishable by law.

Handling

- Keep away from liquids and moisture.
Handset, Battery, AC Charger and USIM Card are not waterproof. Do not use them in the rain or in other humid places (e.g. bathrooms). When carrying handset near your body (pockets, etc.), moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Damage caused by moisture, as mentioned above, is not be covered by the warranty and repair may not be possible.
- Use a dry soft cloth (e.g. eyeglass cloth) to wipe handset.
Handset's color LCD may be treated with special coating for enhanced visibility. Rubbing Display with a dry cloth may scratch the surface. Clean handset carefully using a dry soft cloth for eyeglasses. If moisture or soil is left on Display, the coating may stain or peel off.
Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergent, as it may cause discoloration and remove printed logos.
- Occasionally clean Terminals with a dry cotton swab.
Soiled Terminals may cause poor contact resulting in power failure and insufficient charging.

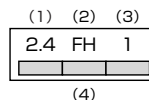
- Do not place handset near an air conditioner vent.
Condensation may form due to abrupt temperature changes, leading to internal corrosion and malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to handset and Battery.
Placing handset in a bag packed with many items or sitting down with handset in your pocket may damage Display, Internal Circuit Board or Battery, and cause malfunction.
Doing so with external device connected to External Device Port may damage connector, leading to malfunction.
- Although handset becomes warm while being used or charged, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not leave the Camera Lens exposed to direct sunlight.
Doing so may discolor or burn Optical Element.
- Do not affix thick stickers or labels to the Display or Keypad side.
Doing so may result in malfunction.
- Do not leave Battery removed or uncharged for an extended period of time. Doing so may alter or erase the settings and data you saved. SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages resulting from such loss or alteration.
- Do not store empty Battery.
Doing so may degrade performance and shorten life of Battery.
- Keep the covers of External Device Port and microSD™ Memory Card Slot closed.
If they are left open, dust or water may get inside handset causing malfunction.
- When removing Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or AC Charger from External Device Port, do not pull the cord, hold the connector. Pulling the cord may result in wire breakage or malfunction.
- If you use an outlet with pullout prevention feature, refer to the instruction manual of the outlet.
- Avoid extremely cold and high temperatures.
Use handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C, and a humidity of 45 to 85 %. If handset is left in an extremely hot place, handset may power off automatically.
- Battery is a consumable item. Replace Battery with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely short even after it is fully charged (depends on conditions of use). Purchase a new battery designated for handset.
- Charge Battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C.

General Notes

- Bluetooth function should only be used within Japan. Handset's Bluetooth function complies with and has obtained certification for Japanese wireless standards.
You may be subject to penalty if used abroad.
- The FeliCa reader/writer function should be used within Japan. Handset's FeliCa reader/writer function complies with Japanese wireless standards and you may be subject to penalty if used abroad.
- The IC card authentication function should be used within Japan. Handset's IC card authentication function complies with wireless standards and has obtained certification.
You may be subject to penalty if used abroad.
- Do not attach USIM Card with labels or stickers attached to handset.
May cause malfunction.
- When connecting an external device, do not insert the connector into External Device Port at an angle. When external device is connected, do not pull the cord.
- Do not use handset without Battery Cover.
Battery may dislodge and result in malfunction or breakage.
- Do not attach labels or stickers to the backside of handset's Display.
Labels or stickers may catch when handset is opened or closed, resulting in malfunction or breakage.
- Handset incorporates a security function compliant with Bluetooth standards for security with Bluetooth communication. However, security may be insufficient depending on such factors as settings. Care is required for communication using Bluetooth.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for leak of data or information during communication using Bluetooth.
- Handsfree/remote control features are available only with compatible Bluetooth devices (headsets, audio devices, etc.).
- Frequency range

Frequency range usable with handset's Bluetooth function are as follow.

- (1) 2.4 : Wireless facilities employing 2400 MHz range
- (2) FH : Modulation method is FH-SS method
- (3) 1 : Estimated distance from which device causes interference is 10 m or less
- (4)  : Device uses all radio frequencies form 2400 MHz to 2483.5 MHz, and it is not possible to avoid the frequencies used by mobile object identification systems



- Precautions using Bluetooth device

This product operates at radio frequencies assigned to licensed in-house radio stations used in production lines of a factory, specific unlicensed low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations (hereafter, referred to as “another radio station”) for mobile identification in addition to scientific, medical, or industrial devices such as microwave ovens.

1. Before using this product, make sure that “another radio station” is not operating nearby.
2. If radio interference between this product and “another radio station” occurs, move immediately to another place or stop radio transmission to avoid interference.
3. Contact “SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52)” on the back of the guide for details.

- To use Earphone-Microphone (sold separately), you must connect Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable into External Device Port.

Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

- Do not force connector into External Device Port. Connector may be the wrong way around. Check direction of connector before inserting to avoid damage.
- When using earphones to make/take calls, earphones must be equipped with a microphone to transmit your voice.
- You can also hear monaural sound (phone conversation, etc.) in both left and right earphones when you connect a stereo earphone to Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.

When a monaural earphone is connected, you can only hear the left channel of stereo audio.

- Do not expose Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable to excessive shock or throw it at something.
- Do not place heavy objects on Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.
- Beware of use while driving a vehicle. Holding and using a mobile phone is subject to penalty. If it is necessary to receive a call, indicate that you will call back with handsfree, and call back after stopping the vehicle in a safe location.

Camera

Creating public disturbances from using handset may be subject to penalties based on applicable laws and regulations (e.g. nuisance prevention ordinance by municipal governments).

General Notes

Speaker

Since handset's receiver (earpiece) also acts as a speaker, there is the possibility of loud sound directly entering your ear such as when playing back sound or a call is received. Loud sound impacting your ear may impair hearing. As soon as a call has ended, be sure to distance handset from your ear.

Touch Sensor

Do not press Touch Sensor with excessive force or use sharp objects (finger nail, ballpoint pen, pin, etc.). May damage sensor.

Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Duplications (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copyrighted materials for purposes other than stated above without permission of the copyright holders constitute an infringement of copyrights and violation of copyright holders' rights, potentially causing claims for reparations or criminal punishment.

Always observe applicable copyright laws when making copies using handset and recording materials using handset camera.

The software installed in this handset is a copyrighted material and involves copyrights and human rights of copyright holders which are protected by copyright laws. Do not duplicate, modify, alter, detach from the hardware, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software in whole or in part by yourself, nor allow any third party to do the same, either.

Functional Limitations

After handset upgrade, subscription cancellation or long periods of handset disuse, TV becomes unavailable.

Caution

Do not use handset if it has been altered. Using an altered device is a violation of the Radio Law.

This handset is certified to conform to the technical standards for specific radio equipment based on the Radio Law, and Technical Conformity Mark  is printed on the model name seal as certification. If you remove screws and make alterations inside of handset, the technical standards conformity certification becomes invalid. Do not use handset with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law.

SAR Certification Information

830N meet the technical standards set by Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards have been established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to a human head from affecting human health. These standards require that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average radio frequency energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

* The technical standards are stipulated in the Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

The highest SAR value is 0.362W/kg for 830N. This value was obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with handset transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in SAR levels among individual products, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power level required to communicate with base stations, the actual SAR of handset during a call is usually below the highest value.

For further information about SAR, see the following websites:

- Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC)
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>
- Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
<http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html> (Japanese)

SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

- * Body SAR: The SAR value at the maximum transmission power when continuously talking with handset placed on the body and using earphone-microphone.
- ** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): The value measured when having talked continuously for 6 minutes.
- *** Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the ordinary handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website:
<http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html>

European RF Exposure Information

This handset 830N is a radio transmitter and receiver. This product has been confirmed not to exceed the limits recommended by international guidelines for radio frequency.

These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. The maximum SAR value for this model handset, when placed on the ear, is 0.292W/kg for 830N*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in SoftBank's Body SAR Policy. In this case, the maximum SAR value is 0.438W/kg for 830N.

Since the SAR is measured at the highest transmitting power level, the actual SAR during a call is usually much smaller. This is because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power levels necessary to communicate with base stations.

The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information about mobile phone use does not indicate any adverse effects on the human body. They recommend limiting the talking time or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body to reduce influence of exposure to radio waves.

Additional information can be found at the WHO website:
<http://www.who.int/emf>

- * Measurements with handset placed on the body are carried out in accordance with the FCC standards. The values are based on European requirements.

Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

The products "830N" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2.

The Declaration of Conformity can be found on the following website:
<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

Minding Mobile Manners

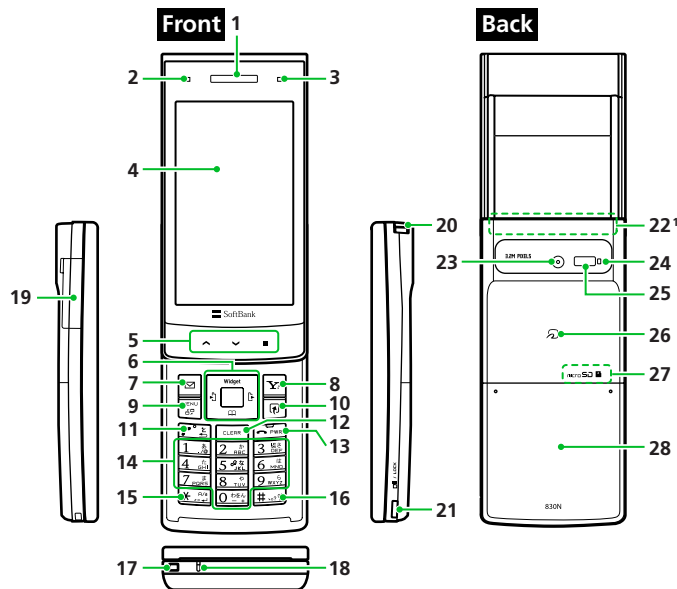
Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Getting Started

Handset Parts	1-2	Mobile Manners	1-20
Basic Key Operations	1-3	Activating Manner Mode	1-20
Opening/Closing Handset.....	1-5	Codes	1-21
Touch Sensor	1-6	Security Code	1-21
Display	1-7	Center Access Code.....	1-21
Display Indicators	1-7	Network Password.....	1-21
Mobile Widget (Japanese).....	1-8	Other Basic Information	1-22
Key Illumination.....	1-8	Checking Battery Level.....	1-22
USIM Card	1-10	My Phone Number.....	1-22
Before Using USIM Card	1-10	Checking Network Status.....	1-22
Other Notes on USIM Cards.....	1-10	Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable	1-23
USIM PINs.....	1-11	Using ECO Mode.....	1-23
USIM Card Installation	1-12		
Battery & Charger	1-14		
Notes on Battery Charging.....	1-14		
Battery Installation	1-14		
Open Port Cover.....	1-16		
Charging Battery.....	1-17		
Power On/Off	1-18		
Power On.....	1-18		
Power Off	1-19		

● SoftBank 830N



- 1 For optimal signal reception, do not cover Internal Antenna with hands or anything else. Do not put stickers over Internal Antenna.
- 2 Earpiece also functions as speaker. Be careful of ringtone/alarm sounding close by your ear when receiving or ending a call.
- 3 Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.
- 4 Battery Cover and Battery must be removed when installing memory card.

- 1 Earpiece/Speaker²
- 2 Charging Indicator/Illumination
- 3 Light Sensor
- 4 Display
- 5 Touch Sensor   & ³
- 6 Multi Selector  & ³
- 7 Mail Key ³
- 8 Yahoo! Keitai Key ³
- 9 Menu Key ³
- 10 Shortcut Key ³
- 11 Send Key ³
- 12 Clear/Back Key ³
- 13 Power/End Key ³
- 14 Keypad  0 - 9³
- 15 *Key ³
- 16 #/Manner Key ³
- 17 Strap Eyelet
- 18 Microphone
- 19 External Device Port
- 20 TV Antenna
- 21 Side Key ³
- 22 Internal Antenna
- 23 Camera
- 24 Camera Indicator
- 25 Infrared Port
- 26 FeliCa Mark
- 27 Memory Card Slot⁴
- 28 Battery Cover

Basic Key Operations

● In Standby (Handset Closed)

No.	Key/Operations	Description
5		Activate Quick Menu when Touch Sensor is on.
21		Turn Touch Sensor on/off.
	Press and hold	Set/cancel key operation lock.

● In Standby (Handset Open)

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Access widgets.
	Press and hold	Open S! Quick News List.
		Open Phone Book Search menu.
		Open Received Calls window.
	Press and hold	Open Received Address List.
		Open Redial window.
	Press and hold	Open Sent Address List.
		Access Desktop Icons.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
7		Open Mail menu.
	Press and hold	Compose a new message.
8		Access Yahoo! Keitai portal.
	Press and hold	Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.
9		Open Main Menu.
10		Activate function assigned to key.
	Press and hold	Assign a function to key.
11		Open Tomo-Den Window
12		Play messages on Answering Machine.
	Press and hold	Set/cancel Answering Machine.
13		Show/hide Desktop Page.
	Press and hold	Turn power on/off.
14	Press and hold	Set/cancel IC Card Lock.
	Press and hold	Set/cancel ECO Mode.
	Press and hold	Set font type, thickness and size.
	Press and hold	Set Privacy Angle on/off.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
14	Press and hold 	Enter “+” (international access code).
16	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode.

●During Voice Calls

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Increase earpiece volume.
	Press and hold 	Continuously increase earpiece volume.
		Decrease earpiece volume.
	Press and hold 	Continuously decrease earpiece volume.
		Open Received Calls window.
		Open Redial window.
7		Turn handsfree on/off.
8		Toggle Hyper Clear Voice modes (High, OFF or Low).
9		Open Task Switch window.
10		Display function menu.
12		Hold call.

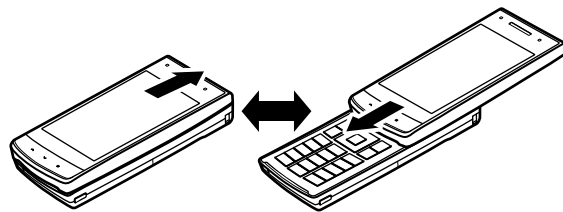
No.	Key/Operations	Description
13		End call.
	Press and hold 	Turn power off.
16	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
21	Press and hold 	Record other party's voice.

●During Text Entry

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Insert line feed “↵” (when cursor is at the end of text).
		Add a space (when cursor is at the end of text).
7		Toggle character entry modes (in 5-touch or T9 input mode). Toggle double-byte and single-byte characters (in 2-touch mode).
	Press and hold 	Toggle text input methods (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 input mode).
8		Switch to pictograph/symbol list.
	Press and hold 	Access My Pictograms (in S! Mail).

No.	Key/Operations	Description
11		Cycle characters in reverse order (in 5-touch mode).
	Press and hold 	Undo last operation (conversion, pasting, cut, etc.) and return to the previous state.
12		Delete one character to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, a character to left is deleted.
	Press and hold 	Delete all text to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, delete all text.
15		Enter dakuten (゛) or handakuten (゜) (in 5-touch or 2-touch mode). Toggle case (in 5-touch or 2-touch mode). Insert line feed "↵".
	Press and hold 	Select area.
16		Toggle Shift, Caps Lock and lower case modes (when entering alphanumerics in T9 input mode).
	Press and hold 	Paste copied or cut text.

Opening/Closing Handset



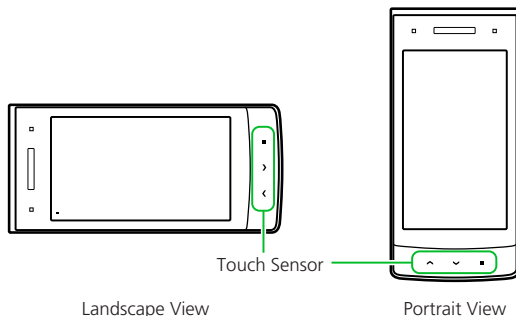
Slide Display open.

Slide Display shut.

Touch Sensor

Use to operate Camera, TV, Music Player, etc., with handset closed.

- Touch Sensor is available in Landscape and Portrait Views.
Position handset as shown below.



- Use  (sidekey) to enable/disable Touch Sensor.
- Touch Sensor illuminates when enabled. When illumination is off, Touch Sensor is disabled.

Tip

- Touch Sensor is illustrated as , , or  in this guide.

Using Touch Sensor

- Lightly tap Touch Sensor (,  or .
- Use  or  to select pop-up options (e.g. YES/NO).

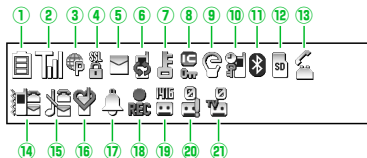
Note

- Simply tap Touch Sensor with finger. Do not use fingernails, ballpoint pens, pins or other sharp objects to tap Touch Sensor.

Tip

- Touch Sensor illumination color changes and handset vibrates upon sensor recognition. Color change and vibration are longer for a press-and-hold recognition.
- Pressing for 30 seconds turns Touch Sensor off and handset returns to Standby.

Display Indicators



- ① Battery Level
- ② Signal Strength
OUT Out of Range
 Emission OFF Mode
 USIM Lock Active
- ③ Yahoo! Keitai Mode
 Yahoo! Keitai Communication in Progress
 Packet Transmission (No Data Transfer)
 Connecting to Network for Packet Transmission
 Packet Transmission (Sending/Receiving Data)
- ④ SSL Secured Site Connected
- ⑤ Unread Messages
 Handset Message Memory Full
 USIM SMS Memory Full (when there are unread messages)

- Handset & USIM SMS Memory Full
- ⑥ Software Updated
- ⑦ Dial Lock Active
 Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
 Original Lock Active
 Original Lock Active in Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
 Infrared Transmission
 Authenticating IC Card
 S! Addressbook Back-up Synchronizing
- ⑧ IC Card Lock Active
- ⑨ ECO Mode
 Privacy Angle On (when Backlight is Off)
- ⑩ Keypad Lock Active (**After Closed, Timer or Lock Key is ON***)
- ⑪ Bluetooth Communication in Progress
 Bluetooth Power Saving
 Bluetooth Call
- ⑫ Memory Card Inserted
 Invalid Memory Card Inserted
 Memory Card Reader/Writer in Use
 Accessing Memory Card
- ⑬ Voice Call
 Video Call
 Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached

- USB Cable Connected in Communication/microSD Mode
 microSD Mode
 Handsfree Device Connected in Communication/microSD Mode
 USB Cable & Handsfree Device Connected in Communication/microSD Mode
 - ⑭ Vibration Set for Incoming Calls & Messages
 Vibration Set for Incoming Calls/Messages
 - ⑮ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls & Messages
 No Ringtone for Incoming Calls/Messages
 - ⑯ Manner Mode
 Auto Manner Mode Start On
 Auto Manner Mode Release On
 - ⑰ Alarm Set
 Alarm Set for Today (appears prior to set time.)
 - ⑱ One Seg Timer Recording in Progress
 - ⑲ New Messages at Voice Mail Center
 - ⑳ Voice Messages on Answering Machine
 - ㉑ Video Messages on Answering Machine
- * **Lock Key** is **ON** by default.

Tip

- To see indicator descriptions:

⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ⇒ **Icons** ⇒

Mobile Widget (Japanese)

Set Widgets to appear on Desktop.

- For information about Mobile Widget, see P. 10-2.



Add Widgets Here

Softkey Functions

Use Pointer to select widget

Desktop Page

Tip

- When Flash® is set to Standby and widgets appear, Flash® stops.

Key Illumination

Key backlight flashes in seven colors in a variety of patterns.

More Features

Customize

Display Settings

- Wallpaper
- Display Color Scheme
- Set Font Type
- Interface Language
- Guard from Prying Eyes
- Display Quality

(▶ P. 14-4)

Backlight

- Set Backlight & Power Saving

(▶ P. 14-7)

Standby Indicators

- Enable Indicator Selector

(▶ P. 14-10)

Key Illumination

- Set Illumination for Power On/Off
- Set Flashing Color for Power On/Off
- Set Flashing Pattern for Call Start
- Set Flashing Color for Call Start
- Set Illumination for Emotion-Expressing Mail
- Set Flashing Pattern for Alarm Notification
- Set Flashing Color for Alarm Notification
- Set Illumination for Snooze Notification

- Set Flashing Color for Snooze Notification
- Set Illumination for Ir/IC Transmission
- Set Flashing Color for Ir/IC Transmission
- Illuminate When Charging Begins
- Set Flashing Color (When Charging Begins)
- Set Flashing Pattern for Handset Open or Close
- Set Flashing Color for Handset Open or Close

(▶ P. 14-39)

Key Backlight

- Set Key Backlight Color
- Set Key Backlight Off

(▶ P. 14-41)

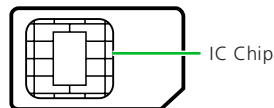
Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card that contains customer information (phone number, etc.). A USIM Card must be inserted to use your handset.

- Store Phone Book entries and SMS on USIM Card.
- Insert USIM Card into other USIM-compatible SoftBank handsets to use information on Card.
- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage caused by inserting USIM Card into other IC card readers/writers.
- USIM Card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Keep IC chip clean.
- For details, refer to the manual supplied with your USIM Card.
- Do not drop USIM Card or subject to excessive shock. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend USIM Card or place heavy objects on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Avoid extreme temperatures.
- Do not scratch, carelessly touch or short-circuit the IC chip. Doing so may result in data loss or malfunction.
- Clean USIM Card with a dry soft cloth (such as is used for eyeglasses).
- Use a SoftBank-designated USIM Card. Using a non-designated card may result in handset malfunction.

Other Notes on USIM Cards

- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon cancellation or suspension of service.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications and performance may change without prior notice.
- Keep a separate copy of data saved on your USIM Card. SoftBank is not liable for lost data.
- If USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).
- Downloaded files (S! Appli, videos, Saved Pages, etc.) saved to handset or memory card may be inaccessible after USIM Card replacement, handset upgrade or service subscription cancellation. If a different USIM Card is inserted, the cookies and cache are cleared to protect personal information.



USIM PINs

There are two security codes for USIM Cards: PIN1 and PIN2.

PIN1

PIN1 is a four- to eight-digit code to prevent unauthorized handset use by a third party.

- Default PIN1 is 9999.
- PIN1 can be changed (P. 4-2).
- When **PIN1 Code Entry Set** is set to **ON**, PIN1 must be entered each time handset is turned on to be used.

PIN2

PIN2 is required to reset total call cost or to set a maximum limit to call costs.

- Default PIN2 is 9999.
- PIN2 can be changed (P. 4-2).

PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK)

If PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, PIN Lock is activated, limiting handset use to specific functions. Enter Personal Unblocking Key (PUK1/PUK2) to cancel PIN Lock.

- For information on PUK, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).

Note

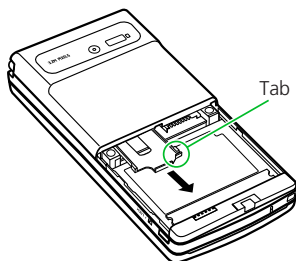
- If PUK1 is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled.
- If PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, operations requiring PIN2 entry are all disabled.
- Write down your PUK.
- To cancel USIM Card lock, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).

USIM Card Installation

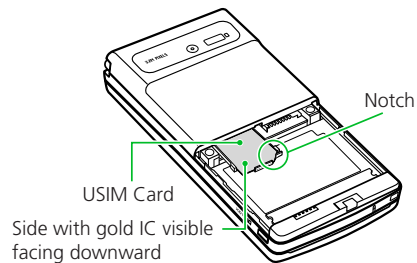
- Remove Battery (P. 1-15) before inserting or removing USIM Card.

Insertion

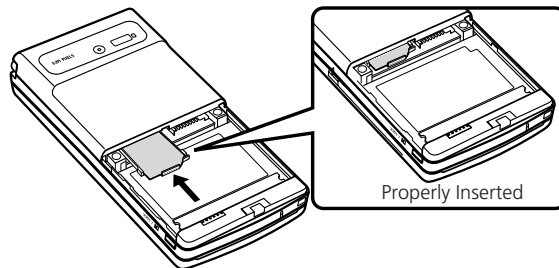
- 1 Pull Tray out by catch



- 2 Place USIM Card on tray with gold IC part facing downward, in the orientation shown



- 3 Push Tray all the way in



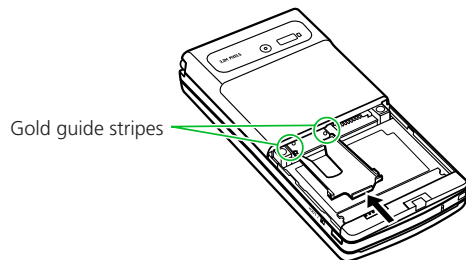
Removal

- 1 Pull Tray out by catch and remove USIM Card

If Tray Detaches

Do not use excessive force to pull Tray; may slide out completely.

If Tray detaches, face Tray properly and align with gold guide stripes, then push Tray in all the way.



Notes on Battery Charging

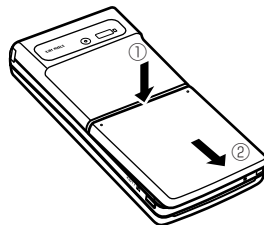
- Charge battery at least once every six months. If battery is left uncharged for a long period, it may become unusable or its operation time may decrease.
- Avoid connecting too many things to one AC outlet. Doing so may cause the AC outlet to overheat and cause a fire.
- Battery and AC Charger may become warm during charging, but this is not a malfunction. If they become too hot, however, stop charging and contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-52).
- If Charging Indicator flashes red during charging, battery may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-52).
- Depending on the conditions of usage, the battery may expand as it nears the end of its life. However, this presents no safety problems.
- Check the battery type on its label:

Mark	Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion battery Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource. Do not dispose of them as municipal waste. Bring used batteries to your nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Observe local regulations on battery disposal.  Li-ion00

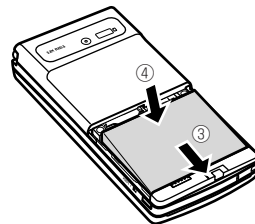
Battery Installation

Insertion

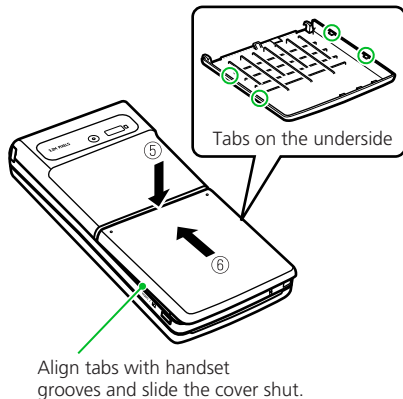
- 1 Press and slide battery cover off



- 2 Insert battery into place



3 Replace cover

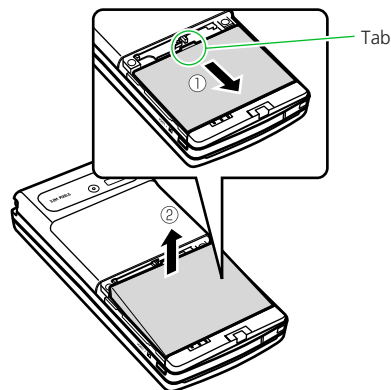


Removal

● Turn off handset before removing battery.

1 Remove battery cover

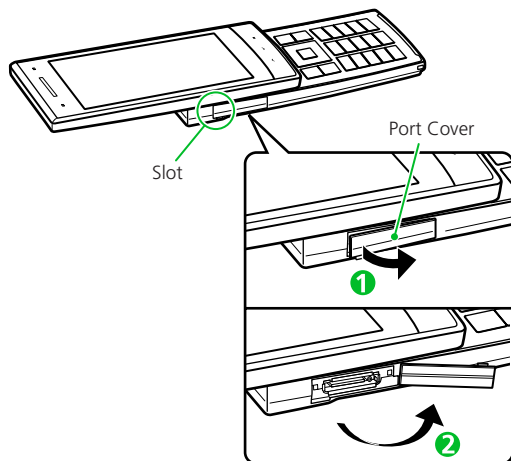
2 Pressing Tab (1), lift out battery (2)



Note

- Do not force Battery Cover shut. Tab may be misaligned, and cause breakage.

Open Port Cover



1 Pull Port Cover in direction of arrow

2 Rotate Port Cover (as indicated by arrow)

- Using excessive force may cause damage.
- Keep Cover completely open (as illustrated) while Port is in use.

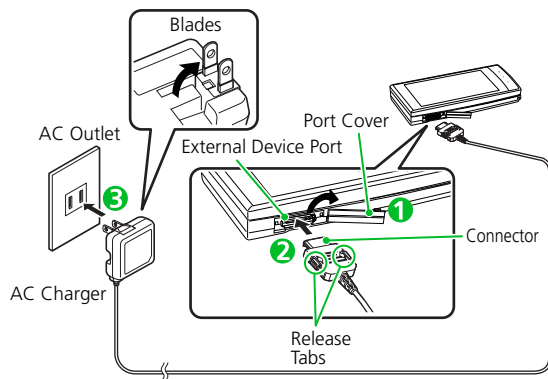
Note

- When handset is connected to an external device, be cautious of Port Cover. Excessive force may damage it.

Charging Battery

Using AC Charger

Use only SoftBank-specified AC Charger "ZTDAA1" (sold separately). In this guide, the ZTDAA1 model AC Charger is referred to as "AC Charger."



1 Open Port Cover

See P. 1-16.

2 Insert Charger connector into External Device Port

3 Extend Charger blades and plug into an AC Outlet

Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.

4 Disconnect connector from handset

Press and hold Release Tabs to remove connector.

5 Unplug Charger from AC Outlet

6 Close Port Cover

Note

- Battery can only be charged while inserted in handset.
- When Charging Indicator and Display Indicator  go out and **Charge Unusual Stop Charge** appears, disconnect handset from AC Charger and remove battery. Set up handset and Charger and start charging again. If the same error occurs, AC Charger may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-52).

More Features

Customize

Backlight

- Set Backlight during Charging

▶ P. 14-7

Power On

- Make sure USIM Card is correctly inserted before turning power on.

1 Press and hold



Tip

- If handset is turned on immediately after powering it off or inserting battery, **WELCOME** may appear in Display for a while.
- After USIM Card is replaced, Security Code is required when powering handset on for the first time. If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset shuts down. Turn handset on again.

● Powering Handset On for the First Time (Initial Setup)

Setup prompt appears in Japanese.

Select **NO** and press  to exit.

After changing interface language to English (P. 14-6), restart handset and perform setup procedure as follows.

1 [Initial Settings] window YES

2 Auto Select a time zone

■ To Manually Enter Date & Time
 **Manual (Date Time Set)** 
 Select a time zone  
 Enter date and time 

3 Enter Security Code (9999) Enter new Security Code YES

4 Select a font size ■ When **Separate Setting** is Selected

Set a font size for each function window (P. 14-6).

5 [Keypad Sound Setting] window ON or OFF

Tip

- Setup prompt no longer appears when all the initial setup items have been set.
- The default Security Code is 9999.

● Retrieving Network Information

When ,  or  is pressed after initial setup, a prompt appears. Select **YES** to update network settings.

Tip

- Retrieve network information to use network-related services, such as mail and the Internet.
- To manually update network settings:
  Settings   Connection Settings   Retrieve NW Info   YES 

Power Off

- 1** Press and hold 
Handset shuts down.

More Features

Customize

Clock

- Hide Clock
- Set Auto Time Adjustment
- Manually Adjust Time
- Summer Time
- Time Zone (Sub Clock)
- Hide Sub Clock
- Summer Time (Sub Clock)
- Time Zone Major City (Sub Clock)

(▶ P. 14-2)

Auto Power On/Off

- Set Auto Power On/Off

(▶ P. 14-3)

Display Settings

- Set a Wake-up Image
- Set a Wake-up Message
- Set Font Sizes Collectively
- Set Font Size for Each Function Window

(▶ P. 14-4)

Sounds

- Set Handset Open/Close Sound

(▶ P. 14-14)

Key/Touch Sensor

- Set No Sound at Key/Touch Sensor Touch

(▶ P. 14-38)

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Activating Manner Mode

Most handset sounds are muted in Manner Mode.

1 Press and hold

■ To Cancel Manner Mode

➡ Press and hold 

Note

- When handset is set to vibrate for incoming calls, be careful as handset may slide off, slide into a stove, etc.

Tip

- Shutter click sounds even in Manner Mode.
- Press and hold  to set or cancel Manner Mode during a call. Short beeps sound through the earpiece when Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.

More Features

Customize

Manner Mode

- Set Manner Mode Type
- Configure Original Manner Mode
- Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Start
- Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Release
- Toggle Auto Manner Mode Start and Release On/Off

(▶ P. 14-13)

Security Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

- Do not reveal these codes to others. Write down your codes.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage due to handset misuse.

Security Code

Security Code, 9999 by default, is required to use some handset functions. The code can be changed.

- If Security Code is entered incorrectly or nothing is entered for 15 seconds, a tone sounds and a message appears. Enter correct Security Code.
- Security Code is referred to as 操作暗証番号 (operation code) on SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Note

- The warning tone does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad Sound* is set to *OFF*.

Changing Security Code

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Security** ⇒  ⇒ **Change Security Code** ⇒ 
- 2 **Enter current Security Code** ⇒ 
- 3 **Enter new Security Code** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

Center Access Code

Center Access Code, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to access Optional Services via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based information.

Network Password

Network Password, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to use Call Barring.

- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

Checking Battery Level

Use Battery Level meters as a guide only.

Battery Level Indicator

Battery Level indicator appears at top of Display.

- Sufficient
- Low
- Almost out. Charge immediately.
- (Flashing) Charging

Battery Level Beeper & Large Indicator

Check battery level by number of beeps and large indicator.

- 1 **Settings** **Other Settings** **Battery Level**

A large battery level indicator appears. Beeps sound according to the battery level.
 Three short beeps: Sufficient
 Two short beeps: Low
 One short beep: Almost out.
 Charge immediately.

Note

- The battery level beeper does not sound in *Manner Mode* or when *Keypad Sound* is set to *OFF*.

When Battery Is Empty

Recharge Battery appears, the battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds, and handset powers off in about 60 seconds. Charge battery.

My Phone Number

Check handset phone number.

- 1

Account Details appear.

Add Other Information

- Enter Security Code
- Select an item Enter information

View All Information

- Display All Data**
- Enter Security Code to switch tabs

Reset Account Details

- Reset** **YES**

Checking Network Status

Check Network Status to confirm if voice calls and/or packet transmission is available.

- 1 **Settings** **Other Settings** **Network Status**
- Network information appears.

Dialing	Packet Transmission	Description
not available	not available	Voice calls/packet transmission not possible.
available	not available	Voice calls possible, packet transmission not possible.
not available	available	Voice calls not possible, packet transmission possible.

Dialing	Packet Transmission	Description
available	available	Voice calls/packet transmission possible.

"Out of Service Area" appears when out of range.

Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

Use Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) to connect an earphone.

Using ECO Mode

When set to ECO Mode, light, sound, and Display settings are modified to decrease battery consumption.

1 Press and hold

ECO Mode is set, and " " appears.

■ Canceling

➡ Press and hold 

Note

- ECO Mode is canceled when power is turned off and on again.

Basic Operations



Menu Operations	2-2	Phone Book.....	2-21
Accessing Handset Functions.....	2-2	Overview	2-21
Desktop.....	2-5	Creating Phone Book Entries	2-22
Navigating through Menus	2-8	Using Phone Book	2-23
Multitask	2-10	Phone Book Settings	2-25
Activating Another Function.....	2-10	S! Addressbook Back-up.....	2-28
Toggling Functions	2-11	Overview	2-28
Text Entry.....	2-12	Using S! Addressbook Back-up	2-28
Overview.....	2-12	Advanced Features.....	2-30
Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode....	2-14	Main Menu.....	2-30
Editing Text	2-16	Desktop Icons.....	2-30
Editing Templates	2-17	Text Entry	2-31
Using Dictionaries	2-17	Templates.....	2-32
Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode....	2-18	Dictionaries	2-32
Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode ..	2-18	Phone Book.....	2-33
		S! Addressbook Back-up.....	2-36

2



Accessing Handset Functions

- In this guide, most operations start from Main Menu.

From Main Menu

Press **MENU** to open Main Menu. Use **▲** to select an item and press **■** to open sub menus.



Main Menu

Tip

- Handset returns to Standby after 15 seconds of inactivity.

Using Softkeys & Multi Selector

Press Softkeys or use Multi Selector in Standby to access assigned functions.

● Softkeys

- **[M]**: Open Mail menu.
- **[Y]** (Press and hold): Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.
- **[P]**: Access the function assigned to the key.

● Multi Selector

- **[D]**: Open Active Desktop Page.
- **[B]**: Open Phone Book Search window.
- **[C]**: Open Received Calls window.
- **[E]**: Open Redial window.

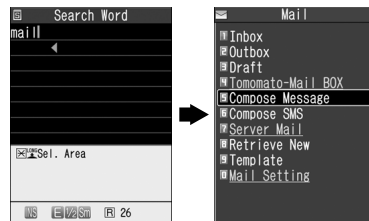
Keyword Search

Enter keywords to search for menu items.

1 **MENU** → **[P]**

2 Enter keyword → **■**

<Example> Enter "mail"



Corresponding results appear.

3 Select an item → **■**

■ Toggling Multiple Items

Press **[Y]** to toggle items.



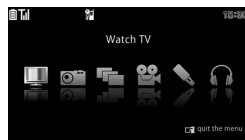
From Quick Menu

Use Quick Menu to access TV, Photo Mode, Photo Slide-show, Movie Mode, Voice Mode or Music when handset is closed.

1

Touch Sensor is enabled (On).

2 Tap , or



Quick Menu

■ Returning to Standby

⇒ or Press and hold

Tip

- Handset returns to Standby after a period of inactivity.

3 or to select a function
⇒

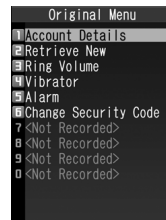
● Menu Items

Icon	Function
	Activate TV (P. 8-7)
	Activate Camera in Photo Mode (P. 7-5)
	Activate Photo Slide-show from Quick Album (P. 12-5)
	Activate Camera in Movie Mode (P. 7-7)
	Activate Camera in Voice Mode (P. 7-9)
	Activate Music Player (P. 9-6)

From Original Menu

Assign often-used functions to Original Menu for quick access.

1 ⇒



Press to toggle between Main Menu and Original Menu.



Enter Menu Item Number

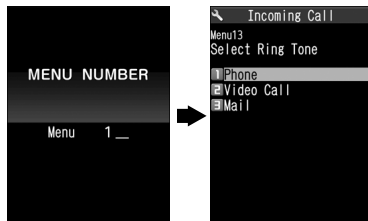
Enter these numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu Theme must be set to **Basic**.

- See P. 15-19 for menu item numbers.
- See P. 2-30 for details on changing Main Menu Theme.

<Example> Access **Select Ring Tone**
(menu no. 13)

1 

2  → 





Desktop

Press to access Desktop. From Desktop, press to toggle Icon window and Info window.

The following shortcuts are set to Icon window by default.

- S! Quick News List
- Photo Mode
- TV
- Quick Search

Icon Window

Add functions to Icon window and use them as shortcuts. Notifications appear to inform you of missed calls, new messages, etc. Select a notification to check the information.



Icons

Icon	Function
	S! Quick News List
	Photo Mode
	TV
	Quick Search
	Call Phone Number
	Compose S! Mail
	Compose SMS
	Access Webpage (Yahoo! Keitai)
	Access Webpage (PC Site Browser)
	Play Melody

Icon	Function
	Show Image
	Play Video
	S! Appli
	Inbox Folder
	Movie Mode
	Voice Mode
	Schedule
	To Do List
	Text Memo
	Bar Code Reader



Menu Operations

2

Basic Operations

Icon	Function
	Text Reader
	Music Player
	Life History Viewer
	Calculator
	Dictionary
	Receive IR Transmission
	Bluetooth
	Original Menu
	PC Site Browser
	Books

Icon	Function
	Play/Erase Msg.
	Play/Erase VC Msg.

● Notifications

Icon	Function/Information
	Missed Calls
	Answering Machine Play/delete messages.
	Answering Machine (Video Message) Play/delete Video Messages.
	Voice Mail
	New Messages
	Failed Alarms

Icon	Function/Information
	Missed TV Programs
	Timer Recording Finished
	Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
	Software Update
	USB Mode Communication
	Network Re-search
	New S! Info Channel
	New S! Info Channel Receive Failure
	New Weather Info.



Icon	Function/Information
	Weather Info. Receive Failure
	Content Keys Acquired

Notifications disappear after accessing the functions/information. Answering Machine and Voice Mail notifications disappear after message is played back.

● Adding Icons

Add up to 15 icons per Desktop theme. Select from three Desktop themes.

- 1** From a function **Add Desktop Icon**

● Accessing Icons & Notifications

- 1**



Icon Window

- 2** to select an icon

■ Scrolling Icons



■ Changing Themes

- Change Desktop** **Select a theme** **YES**

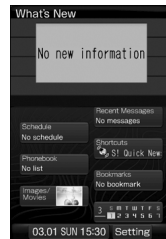
Info Window

Phone numbers, functions, etc. saved to Icon window appear in Info window.

● Accessing Data and Functions

Press to toggle Info window and Icon window.

- 1**



Info Window

Desktop opens to previously used window.

- 2** **Select an item**



● Items

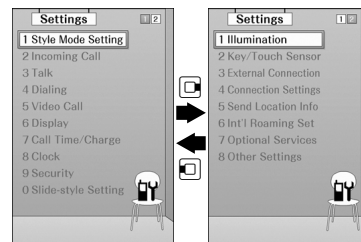
Item	Details
What's New	Access/view Notifications (P. 2-6).
Recent Messages	Access new messages
Schedule	Schedule Access schedule entries (today/tomorrow)
	To Do List Access To Do List entries
Shortcuts	Access Icons saved to Icon Window
Phonebook	Phone Number Access phone numbers from Icon window
	E-mail address Select e-mail address (from Icon window) to Create S! Mail
Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai Access bookmarked sites
	PC Site Browser Access bookmarked sites

Item	Details
Images & Movies	Still images Open image
	Video Play video
Calendar	Open Calendar
Clock	Access Alarm list (Set Main Time window appears when clock is not set)
Settings	• Set items on/off • Change item order

Navigating through Menus

Scrolling Pages

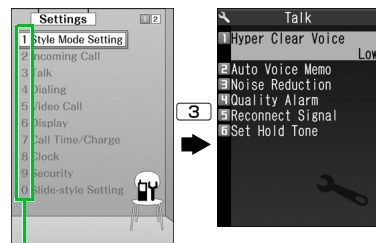
Use  or  to scroll next/previous pages.





Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Use keypad to enter number corresponding to menu item.



Menu Numbers

Return to Previous Window or Standby

Press **CLEAR** to cancel operation and return to previous window.

Press **⏮** to return to Standby.

● May not apply to all functions/windows.

More Features

Advanced

Main Menu

- Change Main Menu Theme
- Switch to Simple Menu
- Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

(▶ P. 2-30)

Desktop Icons

- Edit Title of a Desktop Icon
- Change Icon Image
- Check Icon Information
- Change Order of Desktop Icons
- Delete Desktop Icons
- Reset Desktop Icons
- Show/Hide Desktop Icons

(▶ P. 2-30)

Customize

Menu Display Settings

- List View and Details View
- Set Main Menu Theme
- Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory
- Add a Menu Item to Original Menu

(▶ P. 14-8)

Key/Touch Sensor

- Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key
- Set Touch Sensor Backlight
- Set Vibrator and Illumination for Touch Sensor Operation
- Set Touch Sensor Scroll
- Set Not to Use Touch Sensor

(▶ P. 14-38)

Desktop Icons

- Set Desktop Theme
- Show New Message Indicator as 3D Animation

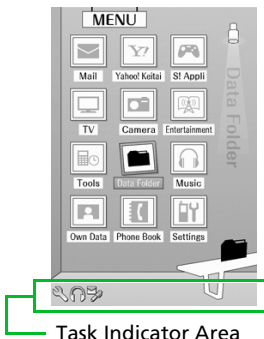
(▶ P. 14-7)



Activate up to three functions simultaneously. Activate one function per group at one time (except TV & Music Group).

Function Group	Function
Mail Group	Mail
Yahoo! Keitai Group	Yahoo! Keitai
S! Appli Group	S! Appli
Settings Group	Settings, Optional Services
Tools Group	Data Folder, Tools, Phone Book, Own Data, Camera
TV & Music Group	TV, Music

- See P. 15-2 for available combinations of functions that can be activated at the same time.
- Currently active functions are indicated by task indicators in Task Indicator Area. To switch to a different function, select the corresponding task indicator.



- Transmission fees are incurred while accessing functions during a voice call.

Activating Another Function

Activate another function without exiting current function.

1 While using a function →

2 → Select another function →

■ Mail Function

After step 1 →

■ To Access Yahoo! Keitai Portal

After step 1 →

■ To Activate Function Assigned to Shortcut Key

After step 1 →



Toggleing Functions

- 1 When multiple functions are active →



Task Switch Window

■ Switching Functions

→ to select a task indicator →

■ Opening Main Menu

→

■ Returning to Standby

→

Press in Standby to reopen Task Switch window.

■ Ending Multitask

→ → *Quit Selected or Quit All Function* →

■ Opening Widget List

→

Tip

- Alternatively, press and hold to end Multitask and return to Standby.



Text Entry

2

Basic Operations

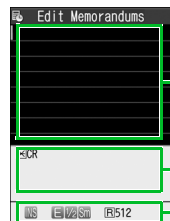
Handset has three text input methods: 5-touch, 2-touch and T9 Input.

● This guide mainly explains Japanese text entry in 5-touch mode.

Overview

Text Entry Window

A text entry window consists of Character Entry Pane, Guide Pane and Status Pane. Indicator and key descriptions are as follows:



Character Entry Pane

Guide Pane

Status Pane

Text Entry Window

● Character Entry Pane

	Cursor
◀	End mark (end of text)

● Guide Pane

▲▼ CHG	☐ to convert characters
▲▼ All ▲▼ Find	☐ to search Phone Book
◀▶ ▲▼ Area	☐ to specify a text range to copy/cut
☒ CR	☒ to insert line feed
☒ A/a	☒ to switch case of each character, or to add dakuten (゛)/handakuten (゜)
☐ AA → aa	☒ to cancel Caps Lock mode
☐ aa → Aa	☒ to set Shift mode
☐ Aa → AA	☒ to set Caps Lock mode
☒ LONG Sel. Area	Press and hold ☒ to select area of text to copy (cut)
☒ LONG Paste	Press and hold ☒ to paste copied or cut text
↶ Back	☒ to cycle characters on a key in reverse order (e.g. え→う)

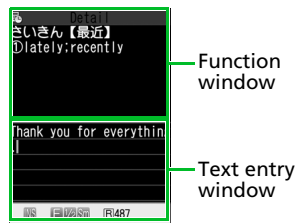
● Status Pane

② ⑤	Text input method (2-touch/T9 Input mode) (No indicator for 5-touch mode)
INS OVR	Insert/Overwrite mode
漢 英 日 記	Character entry mode
☒	Kuten code input mode (P. 2-32)
1/2 1/2	Double-byte/Single-byte mode
☒	Lower case input mode
☒ CAPS LOCK	Shift/Caps Lock mode
☒	Bytes remaining for text entry
☒	Number of entered characters (appears when entering text to USIM Phone Book/SMS message)



Split Windows

In some instances, a second window opens with text entry window.



Referring to Dictionary from a text entry window

●Switching Windows

Press  and select *Change Window* to switch windows.

Changing Text Input Methods

- 1 [Text Entry] window 
 ⇒ **CHG Input Method** 
 ⇒ **Select a text input method** 
 Alternatively, press and hold .

Toggling Character Entry Modes

- 1 [Text Entry] window 
 Press  to toggle entry modes.
 Kanji/hiragana  Katakana 
 Alphanumerics  Numbers

Tip

- In 2-touch mode, press  to toggle single-byte and double-byte modes.

Interruptions during Text Entry

●When Battery Runs Out

Battery alarm sounds and *Recharge Battery* appears. Text is automatically saved. Access the same function to continue text entry. Text may not be saved depending on the function.

●When is Pressed

A message appears asking whether to end text entry. Select **YES** and press  to end text entry without saving the text. To continue text entry, select **NO** and press .

●When a Voice Call Arrives

Answer the call. After call ends, text entry window returns.



Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode

Press a key multiple times to cycle through letters assigned to that key.

- For key assignment, see P. 15-10.

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Enter a reading (in hiragana) and convert to kanji, katakana, etc.

● Using Word Prediction

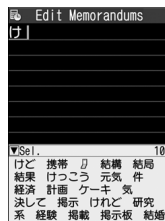
Enter a character and Word Prediction suggests words starting with that character. Word Prediction also suggests word selection for words to follow. Switch to kanji/hiragana mode to use Word Prediction.

<Example> Entering “携帯電話”

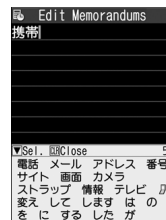
① [Text Entry] window ⇒ ② (4 times)

“け” is entered in Character Entry Pane.

Suggestion list shows predictions for words beginning with “け” in Guide Pane.



② ⇨ Select “携帯” ⇨



“携帯” appears in Character Entry Pane.

A suggestion list of words that follow “携帯” appears in Guide Pane.

■ When Required Word Does Not Appear

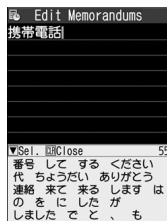
⇨ CLEAR

Continue hiragana (reading) entry in Character Entry Pane to narrow down selection.



Text Entry

3 [Handset] → Select “電話” → [Done]



■ To Exit Suggestion List

→ [CLEAR]

Tip

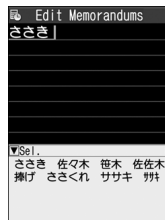
- Handset has a learning feature that adds entered words to the suggestion list. Press and hold [CLEAR] to delete an added word from the suggestion list.

● Converting Hiragana

If the required suggestion does not appear or word prediction is set to Off, convert to Kanji as shown below:

<Example> Entering “佐々木”

1 [Text Entry] window → [3] (once) → [Done] → [3] (once) → [2] (twice)



■ To Delete Last Input Character

→ [CLEAR]

■ To Determine Entered Hiragana without Converting It

→ [Done]

2 [Handset] → [Done]

■ To Reconvert to a Different Word

→ [Handset] → Select a word

■ To Change Conversion Range

→ [Done]

Dakuten (゛) & Handakuten (゜)

<Example> Entering “が”

1 [Text Entry] window → [2] (once) → [Star] → [Done]

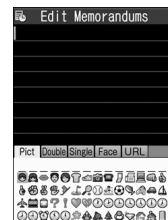
Switching to Lower Case

<Example> Change “つ” to “つ”

1 [Text Entry] window → [4] (three times) → [Star] → [Done]

Pictographs & Symbols

1 [Handset]



2 Select a pictograph/symbol → [Done]



- To Toggle Pictograph/Symbol Categories

⇒  or 

- To Toggle Full-Screen List and Continuous Entry

⇒ 

3 

The pictograph/symbol list window is closed.

Emoticons

1  ⇒ **Face Mark** ⇒ 

2 Select an emoticon ⇒ 

Common Phrases (Templates)

1  ⇒ **Common Phrases** ⇒ 

2 Select a folder ⇒  ⇒
Select a phrase ⇒  (twice)

Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana

Enter alphanumerics, numbers or katakana in kanji/hiragana input mode.

1 [Text Entry] window ⇒
Enter hiragana ⇒  ⇒
Select a character ⇒ 

Editing Text

Deletion & Correction

1 [Text Entry] window ⇒
Move cursor to the left of the character to delete ⇒


■ To Delete All Characters to the Right of Cursor
⇒ Press and hold 

■ To Delete Entire Text
⇒ Move cursor to the end of text
⇒ Press and hold 

2 Position cursor ⇒ Enter correct characters



Copy, Cut & Paste

- Only one entry can be stored on clipboard. If you copy or cut new text, the previously copied or cut text is overwritten.
- Copied or cut text can be pasted repeatedly until you copy or cut new text, or turn handset power off.

1 [Text Entry] window 
 ⇒ **Copy or Cut** ⇒ 

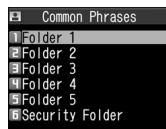
2 Move cursor to beginning of characters ⇒ 

3 Move cursor to end of characters ⇒ 

4 Position cursor  ⇒
 Paste ⇒ 

Editing Templates

1  ⇒ **Own Data** ⇒  ⇒
 Common Phrases ⇒ 



Templates (Common phrases) Window

2 Select a folder ⇒ 



Templates List Window

■ When Security Folder Selected
 ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ 

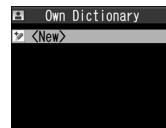
3 Select an entry  ⇒
 Enter text ⇒ 

Using Dictionaries

Saving Words to Own Dictionary

Save frequently used words to Own Dictionary. For each word, save a reading (in hiragana). When the reading is entered in a text entry window, the word appears among the suggestions.

1  ⇒ **Own Data** ⇒  ⇒
 Own Dictionary ⇒ 



Own Dictionary Window

2 <New>  ⇒ Enter word
 ⇒  ⇒ Enter reading ⇒ 

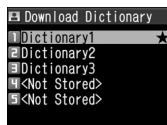
■ To Check Saved Words
 ⇒ Select a word ⇒ 



Using Downloaded Dictionaries

Download dictionaries from Yahoo! Keitai sites. Dictionary must be enabled in advance.

- 1 ⇒ **Own Data** ⇒ ⇒ **DL Dictionary** ⇒



Downloaded Dictionary Window

- 2 Select a dictionary ⇒

"★" appears next to the enabled dictionary.

To Disable a Dictionary

- ⇒ Select a dictionary with "★" ⇒

Tip

- If an emoticon dictionary is enabled, its content is reflected in the emoticon list when entering emoticons.

Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode

Each hiragana character is entered by combining two key presses.

- For combinations of character input keys, see P. 15-11.
- Procedures for selecting predicted words and for converting entered hiragana are the same as those used in 5-touch mode (P. 2-14).

<Example> Entering "キャンブ"

- 1 (き) ⇒ (change to lower case mode)
 ⇒ (ゃ) ⇒ (change to upper case mode)
 ⇒ (ん) ⇒ (ふ) ⇒ (°)

- 2 ⇒

Tip

- Pressing also adds dakuten (°) and handakuten (°) or toggles upper case and lower case.
- Press to toggle double-byte and single-byte modes.

Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode

Press a key once for each character, and select the word from the suggestion list.

- For key assignment, see P. 15-12.
- When character entry mode is "Number," 5-touch input method is automatically applied.

<Example> Entering "春"

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇒
 ⇒

Word predictions for the key combination appear.





Text Entry

■ To Change Conversion Range



■ Toggle Kanji and Hiragana

Suggestion Lists



■ Toggle English and Japanese

Suggestion Lists



2 [Text Entry] window



Select word from among the suggestions in Guide Pane.

■ To Show Converted Words on

Suggestion List



For example, if you specify “はる,” then “張る,” “貼る” and other words that have the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ To Show Predicted Words on

Suggestion List



For example, if you specify “はる,” then “春休み,” “遥か” and other words that begin with the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ To Exit Suggestion List and

Continue Character Entry



CLEAR

3

Re-entering Words

Re-enter as shown below if the desired word does not appear.

<Example> Entering “らんらんと”

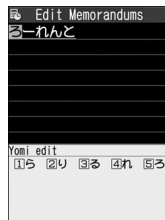
● The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

1 [Text Entry] window

(row ろ)

“らんらん” does not appear in suggestion list.

2



Cursor is on the first character of the word. The edit window opens in Guide Pane, where hiragana characters of row ろ appear.

3

(ら)

(る)

(ろ)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

(る)

■ If No Correction is Necessary

■ To End Re-entering a Word



The words predicted/converted from the re-entered word appear on the suggestion list.

4



More Features

Advanced

Text Entry

- Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case
- Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte
- Cycle Characters in Reverse Order
- Undo Last Operation
- Move Cursor to Top/End of Text
- Overwrite & Insert Modes
- Insert Line Feed
- Input a Space
- Use Dictionary
- Quote Text
- Use Kuten Codes

(▶ P. 2-31)

Templates

- Edit a Folder Name
- Reset a Folder Name
- Edit Templates
- Reset Templates

(▶ P. 2-32)

Dictionaries

- Edit Entries
- Delete Entries

- Edit Title
- View Information
- Delete Dictionaries

(▶ P. 2-32)

Customize

Text Entry

- Set Text Input Method
- Set Word Prediction
- Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana
- Clear Learning History
- Change Font Size
- Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode

(▶ P. 14-38)



Overview

Save phone numbers, e-mail addresses and other contact information to Phone Book.

Phone Book Data & Settings

Contact & Personal Information

- FN • N • R Name & Reading
- GR Group
- 4 Phone Numbers
- 3 E-mail Addresses
- Address
- Birthday
- Memo
- Still Image
- Entry Number

Custom Settings

- Incoming Ringtone
- Incoming Image
- Illumination
- Vibration
- Outgoing Message

Others

Secret Data



Phone Book Usage Examples

Speed Dial

Abbreviated dialing for numbers in Phone Book (P. 3-12).

Tomo-Den

Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den (P. 3-12).

Reject Calls

Reject calls from phone numbers not saved in Phone Book (P. 4-7).

When you make calls or write messages, specify phone numbers or addresses from Phone Book.

● Back Up Important Information

Keep a separate copy of Phone Book entry information. When battery is exhausted or removed for extended periods, Phone Book data may be lost or altered. Damage to handset may also affect data recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered Phone Book data.



Creating Phone Book Entries

<Example>

Enter a name, phone number and e-mail address, and specify a group

1 ⇒ **Phone Book** ⇒ ⇒
 ⇒ **Add to Phone Book**
 ⇒ ⇒ **Phone** ⇒

2 ⇒ ⇒ Enter last name
 ⇒ ⇒ Check reading ⇒
 ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Enter first
 name ⇒ ⇒ Check reading
 ⇒

Reading is entered automatically.
 Edit as necessary.



Phone Book Entry Window

3 ⇒ ⇒ Select a group ⇒

4 ⇒ ⇒ Enter phone
 number ⇒ ⇒ Select an
 icon ⇒

■ To Save Additional Numbers
 Select <Not Stored> and repeat
 the same step.

5 ⇒ ⇒ Enter e-mail
 address ⇒ ⇒ Select an
 icon ⇒

■ To Save Additional Addresses
 Select <Not Stored> and repeat
 the same step.

6

Setting Incoming Image

1 [Phone Book Entry] window
 ⇒ ⇒

2 **Select Image** ⇒ ⇒ Select
 a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a still
 image ⇒

■ To Capture an Image with Camera
 ⇒ **Photo Mode** ⇒ ⇒ Capture
 image ⇒

■ To Cancel Selected Image
 ⇒ **Release This** ⇒

Creating Entries from Other Functions

Create entries from the following
 functions:

- Received calls
- Dialed Calls
- Redial
- Text Reader
- Receives/Sent Address List
- Yahoo! Keitai
- Phone Number Entry window

<Example> Create an entry from
 Received Calls

1 ⇒ Select a record ⇒ ⇒
Add to Phone Book ⇒
 ⇒ **Phone** ⇒

2 **Add** ⇒ ⇒ Search Phone
 Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒
 (twice)

Phone Book Entry window with
 the phone number automatically
 entered opens.



■To Save As a New Entry

⇒ New ⇒ ■

③ Enter other items ⇒ [Envelope] ⇒

YES ⇒ ■

Resuming Phone Book Edit Operation

If battery is empty or if another function was activated while editing an entry, resume operation as follows:

① [MENU] ⇒ **Phone Book** ⇒ ■ ⇒

[Add] ⇒ **Add to Phone Book**

⇒ ■ ⇒ **Phone** ⇒ ■ ⇒

Recall ⇒ ■

■To Save As a New Entry

⇒ New ⇒ ■

② Enter each item ⇒ [Envelope] ⇒ **YES**

⇒ ■

Tip

- Save entry before you exit Phone Book. Otherwise, all changes will be lost.

Using Phone Book

Dialing from Phone Book

① [MENU] ⇒ **Phone Book** ⇒ ■



Phone Book Entry List Window

■To Dial the First Phone Number

⇒ [Call]

② [Envelope] or [Phone] to switch tabs ⇒ [Phone]

to select an entry ⇒ ■



Phone Book Entry Details Window

③ [Phone] to select a phone number

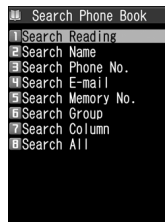
⇒ [Call]

■Video Call

⇒ [Video Call]

Specifying a Search Method

① [Phone]



Phone Book Search Window

② Select a search method ⇒ ■

Search Reading:

Enter a reading and press [Phone].

Search Name:

Enter a name and press [Phone].

Search Phone No.:

Enter a phone number and press [Phone].



Search E-mail:

Enter an e-mail address and press

Search Memory No.:

Enter three-digit entry number.

Search Group:

Select a group to view saved entries.

Search Column:

Press a key (- or) to access the tab corresponding to that key.

Search All:

Phone Book is organized by tabs (Japanese syllabary order).



Phone Book Entry List Window

Tip

- Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card are indicated by .

Accessing Entries from Other Functions

Access Phone Book entries from Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Redial and Received/Sent Address List.

● Access Phone Book from Received Calls

- Look-up Phone Book**

● Access Phone Book from Dialed Calls

- Own Data** **Dialed Calls** **Look-up Phone Book**

● Access Phone Book from Redial

- Look-up Phone Book**

● Access Phone Book from Received Address List

- Press and hold **Look-up Phone Book**

● Access Phone Book from Sent Address List

- Press and hold **Look-up Phone Book**



Phone Book Settings

Customizing Handset Response

Set different ringtones, images, etc. per entry item or Group.

● Indicators

The following indicators appear for set items.



- Ringtone (Incoming Calls)
- Ringtone (Mail)
- Illumination (Incoming Calls)
- Illumination (Mail)
- Vibration (Incoming Calls)
- Vibration (Mail)
- Incoming Image (Calls)
- Outgoing Message (Incoming Calls)

● To Customize by Phone Number/E-mail Address

<Example> Set a ringtone for incoming voice calls

1 [Phone Book Entry Details] window → to select a phone number → ⇒ **Ring TonellImage** →

2 **Voice Call (Recv.)** →

3 **Ring Tone** → ⇒ Select a ringtone type → (⇒ Select a folder → ⇒ Select a ringtone →)

■ To Cancel Custom Settings

⇒ Select an item →

● To Customize by Group

<Example> Set illumination for incoming messages

1 [Phone Book Entry List] window → ⇒ **Group Setting** →

2 Select a group → ⇒ **Ring TonellImage** →

3 **Mail (Recv.)** →

4 **Illumination** → ⇒ Select a pattern →

■ To Cancel Custom Settings

⇒ Select an item →

Note

- Custom settings are unavailable for secret Phone Book entries.
- Custom Settings are canceled when entry is set as secret.



Restricting Calls to/from Specific Phone Numbers

Restrict calls to/from specific numbers in Phone Book. This can help manage personal calls and prevent nuisance calls.

1 [Phone Book Entry Details] window → to select a phone number → → **Restrictions** →

2 Enter Security Code →

3 Select a restriction type →

Restrict Dialing:

Restrict outgoing calls to all numbers except a specified number. To call that number, you need to dial from Phone Book.

Call Rejection:

Restrict incoming calls from a specified number.

Call Acceptation:

Receive incoming calls only from a specified number.

■ To Cancel Restriction

→ Select a restriction type with "★" →

● When *Restrict Dialing* is Set

The following operations are disabled:

- Dialing by Keypad
- Dialing from Received Calls
- Calling from Phone Book (except: calling specified number in Phone Book)

Tip

- When *Restrict Dialing* is set, all records on Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address List are deleted.
- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Restrict Dialing* is set.
- If you change or delete the specified number, the set restriction is canceled. Cancel *Restrict Dialing* to edit or delete.

Setting Entries as Secret

Prevent others from accessing certain Phone Book entries by setting them as secret data.

- Phone Book entries set as secret only appear in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-8).

1 [Phone Book Entry Details] window → → **Set Secret** →

■ To Cancel Secret Setting
→ **Release Secret** →

Tip

- Phone Book entries saved in Secret Mode or in Secret Data Only Mode are automatically set as secret.
- If a Phone Book entry that has been saved to Tomo-Den is set as secret, the entry is canceled from Tomo-Den.



Managing USIM Phone Book

Phone Book entries can be copied between handset and USIM Card.

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **USIM Operation** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Security Code** ⇒

2 **Copy** ⇒ ⇒ **Phone** → **USIM** or **USIM** → **Phone** ⇒ ⇒ **Phone Book** ⇒

3 **Search Phone Book**

4 **Select an entry** ⇒

Repeat this step to specify other entries.

5 ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Note

- Items that cannot be saved to USIM Phone Book are not copied.
- Phone Book entries set as secret cannot be copied.
- You must end copying of Phone Book entries to make/receive calls or send/receive messages.

More Features

Advanced

Creating Entries

- Save a Postal Code, Address & Memo
- Save Birthday
- Change Entry Number

(▶ P. 2-33)

Phone Book Search

- Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List Window
- Change Font Size
- Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order
- Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book
- Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

(▶ P. 2-34)

Managing Phone Book

- Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Check Number of Phone Book Entries
- Edit a Phone Book Entry
- Copy a Phone Book Entry
- Delete Entries
- Delete Items from an Entry
- Delete an Entry from USIM Card

(▶ P. 2-34)

Customize

Phone Book

- Set Preferred Search Method
- Change Group Name

(▶ P. 14-16)



2

Overview

Back up handset Phone Book to server.

- Separate subscription required.
- See SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) for details.

Using S! Addressbook Back-up

Synchronizing Phone Book

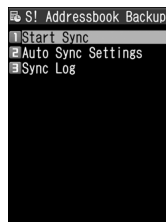
Connect to Phone Book backed up on server and bring it up to date with handset's Phone Book.

- The first time you synchronize will be in *Synchronize* regardless of the setting.
- Synchronization can be any of the following types.

Synchronize	Synchronize handset Phone Book and server Phone Book. Both Phone Books are synced with the newest information.
-------------	--

Sync From Client	Copy updated information to server Phone Book.
Sync From Server	Copy update information to handset Phone Book.
Backup	Back up handset Phone Book to server (note that Server Phone Book is deleted).
Restore	Restore server Phone Book to handset (note that handset Phone Book is deleted).

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **S!**
Addressbook Back-up ⇒



S! Addressbook Back-up Window

2 **Start Sync** ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒

3 Select type of synchronization ⇒ ⇒ **YES**
⇒

Synchronization starts.
Synchronization results appear after completion.

4

Checking Synchronize Log

1 [S! Addressbook Back-up] window ⇒ **Sync Log** ⇒
⇒ Select an item ⇒



More Features



Advanced

S! Addressbook Back-up

- Delete Synchronize Log

(▶ P. 2-36)



Customize

S! Addressbook Back-up

- Set Auto Synchronize
- Check Auto Synchronize Settings

(▶ P. 14-16)



Main Menu

Start Here

[Main Menu] P. 2-2

Change Main Menu Theme

[Main Menu] → [Menu] → Select a pattern → [Enter] (→ YES or NO → [Enter])

Switch to Simple Menu

[Main Menu] → [Menu] → **Simple Menu** → [Enter] → YES or NO → [Enter]

👉 In Simple Menu, font size is larger and menu options are limited to basic ones.

Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

[Main Menu] → [Menu] → Select a theme → [Enter]

👉 Next time you open Main Menu, default Main Menu returns.

Desktop Icons

Edit Title of a Desktop Icon

[Enter] → Select an icon → [Enter] → **Edit Title** → [Enter] → Enter title → [Enter]

Change Icon Image

[Enter] → Select an icon → [Enter] → **CHG Icon Image** → [Enter] → **Select Icon Image** → [Enter] → Select a folder → [Enter] → Select a file → [Enter]

👉 To reset icon image, select **Default Icon Image** and press [Enter].

Check Icon Information

[Enter] → Select an icon → [Enter] → **Icon Info Setting** → [Enter]

Change Order of Desktop Icons

[Enter] → Select an icon → [Enter] → **Sort** → [Enter] → YES → [Enter] → [Enter] to select a position → [Enter]

Delete Desktop Icons

[Enter] → Select an icon → [Enter]

Delete → [Enter]

● To Select **Delete This**
→ **Delete This** → [Enter] → YES → [Enter]

● To Select **Delete selected**
→ **Delete selected** → [Enter] → Select icons → [Enter] → [Enter] → YES → [Enter]

● To Select **Delete All**
→ **Delete All** → [Enter] → YES → [Enter]

Reset Desktop Icons

[Enter] → [Enter] → **Reset Desktop** → [Enter] → YES → [Enter]

Show/Hide Desktop Icons

[Enter] → [Menu] → **Display Setting** → [Enter] → **Display always** or **Display at Use** → [Enter] (→ [Enter])

👉 When **Display at Use** is set, Desktop Icons only appear when you press [Enter] in Standby.



Text Entry

Start Here

[Text Entry] window P. 2-12

Functions Before Entering Text

Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case

[Text Entry] window → [P] →
Lower Case or *Upper Case* → [■]

Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte

[Text Entry] window → [P] →
Single-Byte or *Double-Byte* → [■]

Functions While Entering Text

Cycle Characters in Reverse Order

[Text Entry] window → Input a character → [↶]

👉 This procedure is available in 5-touch mode.

Undo Last Operation

[Text Entry] window → Press and hold [↶]

Move Cursor to Top/End of Text

[Text Entry] window → [P] →
Jump → [■] → *To Beginning* or *To End* → [■]

Overwrite & Insert Modes

[Text Entry] window → [P] →
Overwrite or *Insert* → [■]

👉 Text entry windows always open in *Insert* mode.

Insert Line Feed

[Text Entry] window → [✖]

👉 Press [■] to add a space at the end of text.

Input a Space

[Text Entry] window → [P] →
Space → [■]

👉 Press [■] to add a space at the end of text.

Use Dictionary

[Text Entry] window → [P] → *Refer Dic.* → [■] → *Enter Word* → [■] →

Enter word → [■] → Select a dictionary → [■] → Select a word → [■] → Read descriptions of the word

- To Enter a Word from Search History
→ *Reference History* → [■] →
Select a word → [■] → Select a dictionary → [■] → Select a word → [■] → Read descriptions of the word



Quote Text

[Text Entry] window → [P] →

Quote Data → [■]

- To Quote from a Phone Book Entry
→ **Quote Phonebook** → [■] →
Search Phone Book → Select a data
item to quote text from → [■] → [☑]
- To Quote from Account Details
→ **Account Details** → [■] → Enter
Security Code → [■] → Select a data
item → [■] → [☑]
- To Scan Text by Text Reader
→ **Text Reader** → [■] → Scan text
with camera → [📷]
- To Scan Bar Code by Bar Code Reader
→ **Bar Code Reader** → [■] → Scan a
bar code with camera → [■]

Use Kuten Codes

[Text Entry] window → [P] →

Kuten Code → [■] → Enter kuten
codes (P. 15-13)

Templates

Start Here

[Templates (Common phrases)]
window P. 2-17

[Templates List] window P. 2-17

Edit a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)]
window → Select a folder → [P] →
Edit Folder Name → [■] → Enter
folder name → [■]

Reset a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)]
window → Select a folder → [P] →
Reset Name → [■] → YES → [■]

Edit Templates

[Templates List] window → Select
a template → [P] → **Edit** → [■] →
Edit phrase → [■]

Reset Templates

[Templates List] window → Select
a template → [P]

- To Select *Delete This*
→ **Delete This** → [■] → YES → [■]
 - To Select *Delete All*
→ **Delete All** → [■] → Enter Security
Code → [■] → YES → [■]
- 👉 User entries are deleted, and
preinstalled templates return to default.

Dictionaries

Start Here

[Own Dictionary] window P. 2-17
[Downloaded Dictionary] window
..... P. 2-18

Own Dictionary

Edit Entries

[Own Dictionary] window →
Select an entry → [☑] → Edit word
→ [■] → Edit reading → [■]



Delete Entries

[Own Dictionary] window →
Select an entry → → **Delete** →

- To Select *Delete This*
→ *Delete This* → → YES →
- To Select *Delete selected*
→ *Delete selected* → → Select
entries → → → YES →
- To Select *Delete All*
→ *Delete All* → → Enter Security
Code → → YES →

Downloaded Dictionaries

Edit Title

[Downloaded Dictionary] window
→ Select a dictionary → → **Edit**
Title → → Edit title →

View Information

[Downloaded Dictionary] window
→ Select a dictionary → →
Dictionary Info →

Delete Dictionaries

[Downloaded Dictionary] window
→ Select a dictionary → →
Delete →

- To Select *Delete This*
→ *Delete This* → → YES →
- To Select *Delete All*
→ *Delete All* → → Enter Security
Code → → YES →

Phone Book

Start Here

[Phone Book Entry] window.... P. 2-22
[Phone Book Entry List] window
..... P. 2-23
[Phone Book Entry Details] window
..... P. 2-23
[Phone Book Search] window
..... P. 2-23

Creating Entries

Save a Postal Code, Address & Memo

[Phone Book Entry] window →
or → → Enter content →

Save Birthday

[Phone Book Entry] window →
→ → Enter date of birth →

Change Entry Number

[Phone Book Entry] window →
→ → Change entry number →



Phone Book Search

Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List Window

[Phone Book Entry List] window
 ⇨ ⇨ **Change Display** ⇨ ⇨
Alphabet, Memory No. or Group
 ⇨

Change Font Size

[Phone Book Entry List] window or
 [Phone Book Entry Details] window
 ⇨ ⇨ **Font Setting** ⇨ ⇨
Standard Font, Big Font or Small Font ⇨

Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order

[Phone Book Entry Details] window
 ⇨ Select a phone number/e-mail address ⇨ ⇨ **Move to Top** ⇨

This procedure is available when more than one phone number/e-mail address is saved to a Phone Book entry.

Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book

[Phone Book Entry Details] window
 ⇨ to select an e-mail address ⇨
 ⇨ **Compose S! Mail**

Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

[Phone Book Entry Details] window
 ⇨ to select a phone number ⇨
 ⇨ **Compose SMS** ⇨ ⇨
 Compose SMS message

Managing Phone Book

Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

[Phone Book Entry List] window ⇨
 ⇨ **Ring Tone/Image** ⇨ ⇨
 Select an item with "★" ⇨ ⇨
 Select an item with "★" ⇨ ⇨
Check Settings ⇨ ⇨ Check
 settings of item

Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

[Phone Book Entry List] window
 ⇨ ⇨ **Ring Tone/Image** ⇨ ⇨
 Select an item with "★" ⇨ ⇨
 Select an item with "★" ⇨ ⇨
Release Settings ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨



Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] window
 ⇒ [F] ⇒ **Restrictions** ⇒ [■] ⇒
 Enter Security Code ⇒ [■] ⇒ Select
 a restriction type with "★" ⇒ [F]
 ⇒ **Check Settings** ⇒ [■]

Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] window
 ⇒ [F] ⇒ **Restrictions** ⇒ [■] ⇒
 Enter Security Code ⇒ [■] ⇒ Select
 a restriction type with "★" ⇒ [F]
 ⇒ **Release Settings** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES**
 ⇒ [■]

Check Number of Phone Book Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] window
 ⇒ [F] ⇒ **No. of Phone Book** ⇒ [■]

Edit a Phone Book Entry

[Phone Book Entry Details] window
 ⇒ [F] ⇒ **Edit Phone Book** ⇒ [■] ⇒
 Edit each item ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [■]
 ● To Save as a New Entry
 ⇒ [No] ⇒ [■] ⇒ Enter entry number
 The edited entry is saved as a new entry
 and the original entry remains the same
 as before.

Copy a Phone Book Entry

[Phone Book Entry Details] window
 ⇒ [F] ⇒ **Copy to USIM** or **Copy
 from USIM** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [■]

Delete Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] window
 ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ [F] ⇒
Delete Data ⇒ [■]
 ● To Select *Delete This*
 ⇒ **Delete This** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [■]
 ● To Select *Delete selected*
 ⇒ **Delete selected** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Select
 entries ⇒ [■] ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [■]
 ● To Select *Delete All*
 ⇒ **Delete All** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Enter Security
 Code ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒
 [■]

Delete Items from an Entry

[Phone Book Entry Details] window
 ⇒ [■] to select an item ⇒ [F] ⇒
Delete Data ⇒ [■] ⇒ **Delete Phone
 No., Delete Mail Add., Delete
 Address, Delete Birthday, Delete
 Memorandums, Delete Image** or
Delete This ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [■]



Delete an Entry from USIM Card

⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **USIM**

Operation ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security

Code ⇒ ⇒ **Delete** ⇒

USIM ⇒ ⇒ **Phone Book** ⇒

⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

S! Addressbook Back-up

Start Here

[S! Addressbook Back-up] window
..... P. 2-28

Delete Synchronize Log

[S! Addressbook Back-up] window ⇒
Sync Log ⇒ ⇒ Select Log ⇒

● To Select *Delete This*

⇒ **Delete This** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

● To Select *Delete selected*

⇒ **Delete selected** ⇒ ⇒ Select
Log ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

● To Select *Delete All*

⇒ **Delete All** ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security
Code ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Calling

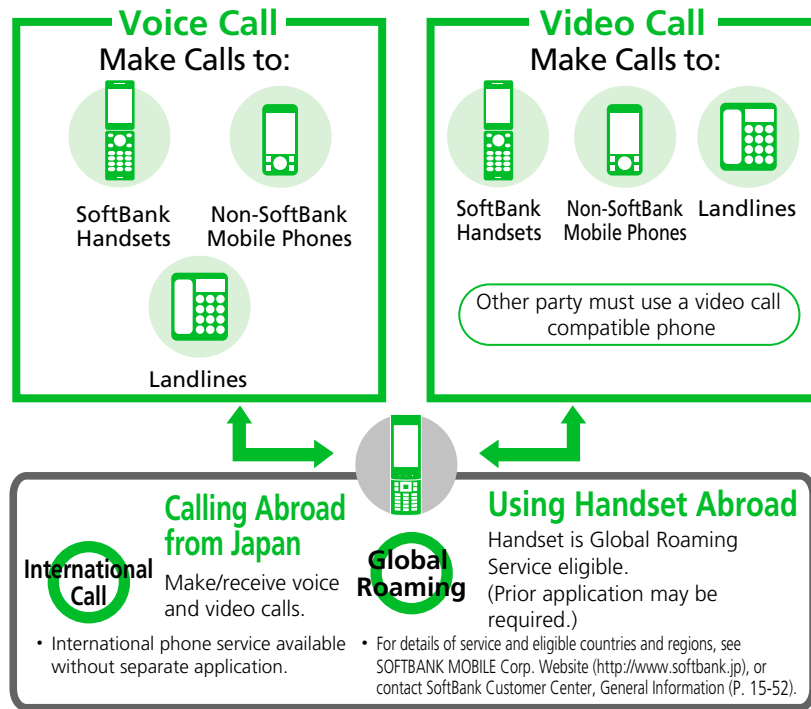


Overview	3-2	Calling While Abroad	
Voice Call	3-3	(Global Roaming)	3-13
Making Voice Calls.....	3-3	Calling Japan and Other Countries	3-13
International Calls.....	3-3	Calling within the Same Country.....	3-13
Answering Voice Calls.....	3-4	Optional Services	3-14
Answering Machine	3-4	Overview	3-14
Video Call	3-7	Advanced Features	3-16
Video Call Window	3-7	Outgoing Call Functions.....	3-16
Making Video Calls	3-7	International Calls	3-16
Answering Video Calls	3-8	Handling Incoming Calls	3-16
Call Logs	3-10	Engaged Call Operations	3-17
Dialing from Call Logs	3-10	Answering Machine.....	3-18
Call Time & Cost	3-11	Call Logs	3-18
Speed Dial	3-12	Speed Dial	3-19
Abbreviated Dialing.....	3-12	Optional Services	3-20
Dialing from Tomo-Den.....	3-12		

3



Voice call and video call are available on handset.



Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119, or 118) with Softbank 3G handsets.

(Emergency Location Report)

830N reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration and transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location and signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with 184). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Not available during international roaming.

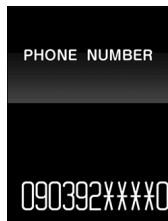
Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

- Restrict Dialing (P. 2-26)
- Keypad Lock (P. 4-4)
- Set Max Cost Limit (P. 14-19)
- Emission OFF Mode (P. 4-7)
- PIN1 Code Entry Set (P. 4-2)



Making Voice Calls

1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

■ Correcting Misentries

⇒ to scroll cursor ⇒ Reenter number(s)

■ Deleting Numbers

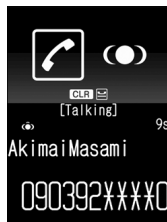
⇒ to select a number ⇒

Press and hold to delete all numbers to the left of the selected number.

■ Deleting Phone Number

Press and hold or

2



Voice Call Window

3 to end call

Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- When you hear a busy tone, the other party is on another line.
- When you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached, the other party's mobile phone is off or is out of signal range.
- When you hear a message asking for your caller ID, call again with your number revealed.
- After Display backlight turns off during a call, if no keys are pressed for about two minutes, Display goes off and handset enters power saving mode regardless of Lighting setting for Backlight (P. 14-7). Handset can be operated in power saving mode in the same way as when Display is lit.

- Call ends when handset is closed. Connect stereo earphone-microphone to talk with handset closed.

Available Keys during Voice Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	or press and hold
Hold Call	

International Calls

International phone service available without separate application.

1 Enter phone number ⇒

⇒ **Int'l call** ⇒

2 Select a country code ⇒

⇒ **Select an international prefix number** ⇒ ⇒

3 to end call



Answering Voice Calls

1 When a call arrives →

2 to end call

Tip

- Open handset to answer a call.

Answering Machine

Record caller's messages on handset when you are unable to answer voice or video calls.

Setting Answering Machine

1 → **Settings** → → **Incoming Call** → → **Answering Machine** →

2 **ON** → → Select an outgoing message →

3 Enter ring time

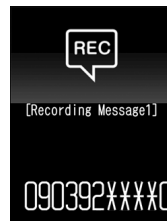
Tip

- When Voice Mail or Call Forward is activated, set a shorter ring time for Answering Machine than that for Voice Mail or Call Forward.
- Answering Machine can be set or canceled by pressing and holding in Standby.
- Answering Machine is unavailable when power is off, in a place with no signal reception, or in Emission OFF Mode. Use Voice Mail instead (see P. 3-15).

When a Call Arrives

Answering Machine activates after the set ring time. Outgoing message plays, and the caller's voice/video message is recorded.

Handset returns to Standby when recording is complete. Answering Machine notification and Display indicator appear. The indicator shows the number of messages.



To Answer Call during Recording

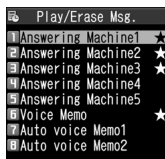
→



Playing Messages

1 Select notification

or



Play/Delete Voice Message Window

Items with a message recorded are indicated by "★."

2 Select a message

■ To Delete a Message While Playing it

Erase YES

Available Keys during Playback

Play Next Message	
Stop	or
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	

Tip

- Pressing in Standby also plays recorded voice messages.
- When there is a voice memo but no voice message, the voice memo plays.
- To play voice messages from Main Menu:
 Tools Play/Erase Msg.

Available Keys during Video Message Playback

Play Previous/Next Message	or
Adjust Volume	
Pause/Play	
Stop	
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	

Tip

- To play video messages from Main Menu:
 Tools Play/Erase VC Msg.

Activate When Call Arrives

Activate Answering Machine when unable to answer an incoming call. Answering Machine setting returns, after message is recorded.

1 When a call arrives

Answering Machine is activated and starts recording.

Note

- Answering Machine cannot be activated when memory is full.



More Features

Advanced

Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

(▶ P. 3-16)

International Calls

- Enter “+” to Call Abroad

(▶ P. 3-16)

Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls
- Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

(▶ P. 3-16)

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Toggle Device (Handset and Bluetooth® Device)
- Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)
- Send Touch Tones

(▶ P. 3-17)

Answering Machine

- Delete Recorded Messages

(▶ P. 3-18)

Customize

Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers
- Save Touch Tones
- Set Numbers after “*” as Sub Address

(▶ P. 14-17)

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image

(▶ P. 14-4)

International Calls

- Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with “+”
- Change a Country Code
- Save an International Access Code

(▶ P. 14-17)

Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set an Incoming Call Image

- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

(▶ P. 14-10)

Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Answer Calls by Opening Handset

(▶ P. 14-12)

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Clarity of Other Party Voice
- Automatically Record During Voice Call
- Set a Hold Message

(▶ P. 14-18)



Video Call Window



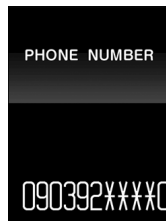
Video Call Indicators

	Hyper Clear Voice High
	Hyper Clear Voice Low
	Transmitting Audio
	Transmission Failed
	Transmitting Video
	Transmission Failed
	Sending Camera Image
	Substitute Image
	Handsfree ON
	Handsfree OFF
	Mute

- Photo Mode Portrait
- Photo Mode Scenery
- Photo Mode Close-up

Making Video Calls

1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

■Correcting Misentries

⇒ to scroll cursor ⇒ Reenter number(s)

■Deleting Numbers

⇒ to select a number ⇒ Press and hold to delete all numbers to the left of the selected number.

■Deleting Phone Number

⇒ to select the first or last number ⇒ Press and hold

2



Video Call Window

3 to end call

Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- Video calls made to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are automatically switched to voice calls.
- An error message with a possible cause appears when a video call fails to be connected.
- Handset is unequipped with a front camera. Image sent to other party is substitute image or rear camera image.



- Charging may automatically stop or camera image may switch to substitute image if charging while making a video call, depending on temperature and handset usage (ex. also recording TV).
- Call ends when handset is closed. Connect stereo earphone-microphone to talk with handset closed.

Available Keys during Video Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	or press and hold
Hold Call	
Toggle Main Window Images	Press and hold to toggle image as follows: The other party's image → Your image → The other party's image (sub window off) → Your image (sub window off)
Zoom In/Out Outgoing Camera Image	or press and hold
Mute Audio	 To cancel mute, press again

Answering Video Calls

- 1 When a video call arrives →



- 2 to end call

Tip

- Open handset to answer a video call.



More Features

Advanced

Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

(▶ P. 3-16)

Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls

(▶ P. 3-16)

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Toggle Device (Handset and Bluetooth® Device)
- Set Image Quality
- Adjust Brightness
- Change White Balance
- Change Color Tone
- Change Photo Mode
- Backlight Lighting Time

(▶ P. 3-17)

Customize

Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers
- Set Numbers after “*” as Sub Address

(▶ P. 14-17)

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image

(▶ P. 14-4)

Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

(▶ P. 14-10)

Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Answer Calls by Opening Handset

(▶ P. 14-12)

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction

- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set a Hold Message

(▶ P. 14-18)

Video Calls

- Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls
- Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails
- Set an Image to Appear in Main Window
- Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls

(▶ P. 14-19)



Dialing from Call Logs

Phone numbers and dates and times of incoming and outgoing calls are saved on handset as call logs. Access call logs to return calls quickly.

Call Log Indicators

The following indicators appear in Redial, Dialed Calls and Received Calls windows.

Voice Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
International Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
Video Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed

International Video Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
Answering Machine	
	Voice Messages
	Video Messages
Packet Transmission	
	Outgoing & Incoming Calls
Appears when outside the GMT+09 time zone.	
Time appears in summer time when summer time is set.	

Redial/Received Calls

1 or

Redial 1/2	
1	3/ 1 9:45
	AkimaMasami
2	2/28 20:21
	KitagawaRikio
3	2/27 11:56
	NakayamaTaro
4	2/26 21:13
	090392****7
5	2/25 10:32
	OzawaEisuke
6	2/20 19:56
	090392****6

Redial Window

Received Calls 1/2	
1	3/ 1 12:58
	AkimaMasami
2	2/28 22:06
	090392****6
3	2/27 7:12
	090392****7
4	2/18 20:47
	090392****8
5	2/15 14:26
	OzawaEisuke
6	2/11 8:53
	KitagawaRikio

Received Calls Window

2 Select a record or

■ To Check Details of a Record

⇒ Select a record

Dialed Calls

1 ⇒ Own Data ⇒ ⇒

Dialed Calls

Dialed Calls 1/2	
1	3/ 1 9:45
	AkimaMasami
2	2/28 20:21
	KitagawaRikio
3	2/27 11:56
	NakayamaTaro
4	2/26 21:13
	090392****7
5	2/25 10:32
	OzawaEisuke
6	2/20 19:56
	090392****6

Dialed Calls Window

2 Select a record or

■ To Check Details of a Record

⇒ Select a record



Checking Number of Missed Calls

- 1 ⇒ **Own Data** ⇒ ⇒ **Received Calls** ⇒

The total number of incoming calls, number of missed calls, and number of unchecked missed calls appear.

- 2 **All Calls or Missed Calls** ⇒

Call Time & Cost

Check the total and last call times and costs.

Call cost and cost limit may be unavailable depending on your subscription.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Call Time/Charge** ⇒ ⇒ **Call Data** ⇒

Tip

- Use indicated call times and costs only as a guide. The actual call time and cost may be different. Your handset may not indicate call costs depending on the service you subscribe. Indicated costs do not include consumption tax.
- When the last or total call time exceeds 199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting restarts from zero seconds.

More Features

Advanced

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

- Change Font Size
- Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)
- Delete Records

(▶ P. 3-18)

Call Time & Cost

- Reset Total Call Time
- Reset Total Call Cost

(▶ P. 3-19)

Customize

Incoming Call Alerts

- Open Missed Calls Window by Opening Handset

(▶ P. 14-10)

Checking Call Logs

- Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

(▶ P. 14-14)

Call Costs

- Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost
- Set/Cancel a Maximum Call Cost Limit

(▶ P. 14-18)



Abbreviated Dialing

Just press a number key from **0** to **9** and then **[Phone Icon]** to call Phone Book entries with entry numbers 000 to 009.

- If a Phone Book entry has more than one phone number, handset dials the first number.

1 **0** to **9** ⇒ **[Phone Icon]** or **[Mail Icon]**

Dialing from Tomo-Den

Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den to quickly make calls or send messages.

- Tomo-Den is unavailable in Secret Data Only Mode.
- Although Tomo-Den is available in Secret Mode, secret Phone Book entries cannot be saved to Tomo-Den.

Saving Entries to Tomo-Den

1 **[Phone Icon]**



Tomo-Den Window

2 **[Tab Icon]** to select a tab ⇒ **[Mail Icon]** ⇒

Search Phone Book ⇒ **Select an entry** ⇒ **[Select Icon]**

3 **Select a phone number or e-mail address** ⇒ **[Select Icon]**

When a checkbox is selected, other numbers/addresses become grayed and cannot be selected. To select another number/address, first cancel the currently selected checkbox.

4 **[Mail Icon]**

Dialing/Sending Messages from Tomo-Den

1 **[Phone Icon]**

2 **[Tab Icon]** to select an entry ⇒ **CALL, MAIL or VIDEO CALL** ⇒ **[Select Icon]**

■ To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries

⇒ **[Broadcast Mail Icon]** ⇒ **Broadcast Mail** ⇒ **[Compose Mail Icon]** ⇒ **Compose S! Mail**

More Features

Advanced

Speed Dial

- Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den
- Change Tomo-Den Entry Image

(► P. 3-19)



Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming)

Make calls while overseas.

- Global Roaming Service may require prior application. Details and applications are available online at <http://www.softbank.jp> or by contacting SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).
- 830N is compatible with 3G networks. Transmission is unavailable in GSM/GPRS areas.

Calling Japan and Other Countries

- 1** Press and hold
 "+" is entered.

- 2** Enter country code and phone number with area code (excluding the first "0")
  

Tip

- Do not omit the first "0" from area code when calling Italy.

Calling within the Same Country

- 1** Enter phone number with area code  
 • Do not omit "0" from area code.
 • Country code not required.

More Features

Customize

Global Roaming

- Set Operator
- Activate Network Re-search for an Available Operator
- Set Priority for Operators
- Show Operator Name While Roaming
 (▶ P. 14-20)



Overview

The following services are available with your handset.

Call Forward	Forward calls to a preset phone number.
Voice Mail	Forward calls to Voice Mail Center when unable to answer a call. Missed Call Notification Notification (SMS) arrives for missed calls while handset was off, out of range or engaged, etc.
Call Waiting*	Place the current call on hold to answer another incoming call. Talk with two parties alternately.
Group Calling*	Call others during a call and talk with multiple parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Select whether to restrict incoming and outgoing calls and SMS.

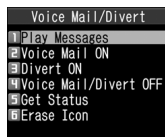
Caller ID	Select whether to show or hide your number when making calls.
-----------	---

* Separate application is required.

Activating Call Forward

<Example> Forward calls to a specified number after a set ring time

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Optional Services** ⇒ ⇒ **Voice Mail/Divert** ⇒



Voice Mail/Divert Window

- 2 **Divert ON** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ **Voice/Video Calls, Voice Calls or Video Calls** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter phone number** ⇒

■ To Search from Phone Book

- ⇒ to select a search method ⇒ ⇒ **Search Phone Book** ⇒ **Select an entry** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a phone number** ⇒ (twice)

3 **No Answer** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a ring time** ⇒

- **To Forward Calls Immediately** ⇒ **Always** ⇒

Tip

- If **No Answer** is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded. If **Always** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate and all calls are forwarded to the preset number.
- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously. Call Forward for video calls is only available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forward when Voice Mail has already been set, Voice Mail is canceled.



Activating Voice Mail

<Example> Forward calls to Voice Mail Center after a set ring time

1 [Voice Mail/Divert] window
⇒ **Voice Mail ON** ⇒ ⇒
YES ⇒

2 **No Answer** ⇒ ⇒ Select a ring time ⇒

■ To Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center Immediately
⇒ **Always** ⇒

Tip

- If **No Answer** is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded to Voice Mail Center. If **Always** is set, handset does not ring or vibrate and all calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center.
- Voice Mail and Call Forward cannot be set simultaneously. Voice Mail is only available with Call Forward for video calls.
- If you activate Voice Mail when Call Forward has already been set, Call Forward is canceled.

Missed Call Notification

SMS notification informs you of missed calls while handset was off, out of range, engaged, etc.

1
Follow voice guidance.

To Play Messages

1 [Voice Mail/Divert] window
⇒ **Play Messages** ⇒ ⇒
YES ⇒

Canceling Call Forward & Voice Mail

1 [Voice Mail/Divert] window
⇒ **Voice Mail/Divert OFF**
⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

More Features

Advanced

Call Forward & Voice Mail

- Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages

- Check Current Setting Status (▶ P. 3-20)

Call Waiting

- Set Call Waiting
- Answer Incoming Calls during Calls
- Check Current Setting Status (▶ P. 3-20)

Group Calling

- Hold Current Call to Make Another Call
- Switch Parties
- Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously
- Talk with a Specific Party
- End Call with a Specific Party (▶ P. 3-20)

Call Barring

- Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS
- Cancel Call Barring
- Change Network Password
- Check Current Setting Status (▶ P. 3-21)

Caller ID

- Show/Hide Phone Number
- Check Current Setting Status (▶ P. 3-22)



Outgoing Call Functions

Show/Hide Caller ID

Enter phone number → →

Notify Caller ID → → **OFF, ON**
or **Cancel Prefix** → → or

Alternatively, enter "186" before the phone number to show your number, or "184" to hide your number.

Show/hide Caller ID each time you dial from Phone Book or call logs (Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls).

Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

Enter phone number → →

Prefix Numbers → → Select an item → → or

Store area codes and country codes beforehand. Enter prefixes before making calls.

Add prefix from Phone Book entry, Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls windows.

0046010 is set to 国際発信 by default.

International Calls

Enter "+" to Call Abroad

Press and hold → Enter country code → Enter area code → Enter phone number → → **Dial** →

"+" appears when you press and hold , indicating that the international code set in *Auto Int'l Call Set.* is entered.

Handling Incoming Calls

Reject Calls

When a call arrives → → **Call Rejection** →

Place Calls on Hold

When a call arrives → → To answer call →

Press again to end the call on hold.

Forward Calls

When a call arrives → → **Call Forwarding** →

This procedure is available when Call Forward has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

Voice Calls

Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

When a call arrives → → **Call Forwarding** →

This procedure is available when Voice Mail has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.



Engaged Call Operations

Start Here

[Voice Call] window P. 3-3

[Video Call] window P. 3-7

Voice & Video Calls

Handsfree

[Voice Call] window/ [Video Call] window → → **YES** →

Press again to cancel handsfree mode.

Toggle Device (Handset and Bluetooth® Device)

[Voice Call] window/ [Video Call] window → → **Bluetooth/Phone** →

Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)

[Voice Call] window/ [Video Call] window →

Press to toggle setting High, Off or Low.

Not available when handsfree is On or when an external device (ex. stereo earphone-microphone (sold separately) is connected).

Voice Calls

Send Touch Tones

[Voice Call] window → (twice) → **Settings** → → **Dialing** → → **Pause Dial** → (twice)

Each time you press , a touch tone sequence until "p" (pause) is sent.

Save touch tones in advance (P. 14-17).

- To send touch tones all at once:
→ Press and hold → **Send at one time** →

Video Calls

Set Image Quality

[Video Call] window → → **V. Call Settings** → → **Visual Prefer.** → → Select an item →

Adjust Brightness

[Video Call] window → → **V. Call Settings** → → **Brightness** → → Select a level →

Available when sending camera image.

Change White Balance

[Video Call] window → → **V. Call Settings** → → **White Balance** → → Select an item →

Available when sending camera image.



Change Color Tone

[Video Call] window → [P] →
V. Call Settings → [■] → **Color**
Mode Set → [■] → Select an item
 → [■]

[Hand icon] Available when sending camera image.

Change Photo Mode

[Video Call] window → [P] →
V. Call Settings → [■] → **Photo**
Mode → [■] → Select a mode → [■]

[Hand icon] Available when sending camera image.

Backlight Lighting Time

[Video Call] window → [P] →
Display Light → [■] → **All Time ON**
 or **Same as Backlight** → [■]

Answering Machine

Start Here

[Play/Delete Voice Message] window
 P. 3-5

Delete Recorded Messages

[Play/Delete Voice Message]
 window → Select a message → [P]
 → **Delete This, Delete Rec. Msg.** or
Delete All → [■] → **YES** → [■]

[Hand icon] Selecting **Delete All** also deletes a voice memo if it has been saved.

Call Logs

Start Here

[Redial] window P. 3-10
 [Dialed Calls] window P. 3-10
 [Received Calls] window P. 3-10

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

Change Font Size

[Redial] window, [Dialed Calls]
 window or [Received Calls]
 window → [P] → **Font Setting** →
 [■] → **Standard Font, Big Font** or
Small Font → [■]

Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)

[Received Calls] window → [P] →
Ring Time → [■]



Delete Records

[Redial] window, [Dialed Calls] window or [Received Calls] window → → **Delete** →

- Delete Selected Entry

→ **Delete This** → → **YES** →

- Select Entries to Delete

→ **Delete selected** → → Select records → → **YES** →

- Delete All Entries

→ **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Selecting **Delete All** in Redial window or Dialed Calls window deletes all records from both Redial and Dialed Calls.

Call Time & Cost

Reset Total Call Time

→ **Settings** → →

Call Time/Charge → → **Reset Total** → → Enter Security Code → → **Reset Total Duration** → → **YES** →

Reset Total Call Cost

→ **Settings** → →

Call Time/Charge → → **Reset Total** → → Enter Security Code → → **Reset Total Cost** → → **YES** → → Enter PIN2 →

Speed Dial

Start Here

[Tomo-Den] window P. 3-12

Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den

[Tomo-Den] window → to select a tab → → **Release This** or **Release All** → (→ Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Change Tomo-Den Entry Image

[Tomo-Den] window → to select a tab → → **Image** → → Select a folder → → Select an image →



Optional Services

Start Here

[Voice Mail/Divert] window P. 3-14

[Voice Call] window P. 3-3

Call Forward & Voice Mail

Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages

[Voice Mail/Divert] window →
Erase Icon → → YES →

Check Current Setting Status

[Voice Mail/Divert] window → *Get Status* →

Call Waiting

Set Call Waiting

→ *Settings* → → *Optional Services* → → *Call Waiting* →
 → ON or OFF → → YES →

Answer Incoming Calls during Calls

[Voice Call] window → Call
waiting tone sounds →

Press to toggle between two parties.

Check Current Setting Status

→ *Settings* → → *Optional Services* → → *Call Waiting* →
 → *Get Status* →

Group Calling

Hold Current Call to Make Another Call

[Voice Call] window → →
Enter phone number →

To dial from Phone Book, press →
Phone Book → , search Phone Book, select a number and then press .

To dial from Dialed/Received Calls, press → *Redial* → or →
Received Calls → to select a phone number or name and then press .

Switch Parties

[Voice Call] window →
 Press to toggle parties.



Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously

[Voice Call] window → While talking with one party → → **Join Multi Party** →

Talk with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window → While talking with multiple parties → → **Select Ans. Call** → → Select a party →

The other parties are placed on hold while talking with the selected party.

End Call with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window → While talking with multiple parties → → **Select Disc Call** → → Select a party →

Call Barring

Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Outgoing Calls** or **Incoming Calls** → → Select an item → → **YES** → → Enter Network Password →

Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when Call Barring is set.

When **Bar All Outgoing Calls** or **Bar All Incoming Calls** is set for Call Barring, Call Forward is unavailable (When Call Forward is set, Call Barring is unavailable).

If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).

Cancel Call Barring

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Cancel All Barring** → → **YES** → → Enter Network Password →

Change Network Password

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Set NW Password** → → **YES** → → Enter current Network Password → → Enter new Network Password → → Enter new Network Password again for confirmation →

Check Current Setting Status

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Get Status** → → Select an item →



Caller ID

Show/Hide Phone Number

 ⇒ *Settings* ⇒  ⇒ *Optional Services* ⇒  ⇒ *Caller ID Notification* ⇒  ⇒ *Activate/Deactivate* ⇒  ⇒ *ON or OFF* ⇒  ⇒ *YES* ⇒ 

Check Current Setting Status

 ⇒ *Settings* ⇒  ⇒ *Optional Services* ⇒  ⇒ *Caller ID Notification* ⇒  ⇒ *Get Status* ⇒ 

Security



PIN Settings.....	4-2	Setting Secret Data	4-8
Setting PIN1 Entry	4-2	Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode....	4-8
Changing PIN1/PIN2	4-2	Hiding Handset Data	4-8
Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset			
Use	4-3		
Activating Dial Lock	4-3		
Setting Original Lock	4-3		
Disabling Keypad	4-4		
Using Secure Remote Lock	4-5		
Using IC Card Authentication.....	4-6		
Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming			
Calls	4-7		
Rejecting Calls without Caller ID.....	4-7		
Rejecting Calls from Numbers			
Not Saved in Phone Book	4-7		
Delaying Ringtone for Numbers			
Not Saved in Phone Book	4-7		
Emission OFF Mode	4-7		

4



Setting PIN1 Entry

Set to require PIN1 entry each time handset is turned on.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **PIN Setting** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒
- 3 **PIN1 Code Entry Set** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ⇒ Enter PIN1 ⇒

Changing PIN1/PIN2

● *PIN1 Code Entry Set* must be set to *ON* before changing PIN1.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **PIN Setting** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒
- 3 **Change PIN1 Code or Change PIN2 Code** ⇒
- 4 Enter current PIN1/PIN2 ⇒
- 5 Enter new PIN1/PIN2 ⇒ ⇒ Enter new PIN1/PIN2 again for confirmation ⇒



Activating Dial Lock

Prevent others from operating handset.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Lock** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒
- 3 **Dial Lock** ⇒

Tip

- The following operations are possible even when Dial Lock is activated:
 - Power on/off
 - Calling emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118
 - Answering incoming voice/video calls

Canceling Dial Lock

- 1 Enter Security Code ⇒
If incorrect Security Code is entered, press and enter correct Security Code.

Tip

- If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset powers off. Turn handset power on and enter correct Security Code.

Setting Original Lock

Prevent others from accessing handset functions/data (e.g. Phone Book, Mail, etc.) that contain personal information. Original Locks can be customized.

- For IC Card Lock and Call Remote Lock, see P. 11-4.

Activating Original Lock

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Lock** ⇒

2 Enter Security Code ⇒



Lock Window

3 Original Lock (High) - Original Lock (Low) ⇒

Functions/data specified under the selected lock type are locked.

■ To Edit Title

- ⇒ Select an Original Lock ⇒ ⇒ **Edit Title** ⇒ ⇒ Edit title ⇒

● When Original Lock is Set

Security Code entry is requested when accessing a locked function or data. Enter Security Code to unlock and access function/data. Setting returns when handset returns to Standby.

- **Dial/Sending Mail** and **Incoming/Mail Disp.** cannot be unlocked temporarily.



Customizing Original Lock

Select functions/data to lock.

● Indicators

Selected functions/data locked.

All functions/data locked.

● Select and Lock Functions or Data

1 [Lock] window → Select an Original Lock →

2 Select a category →

3 Select a group →

4 Select functions or data to Lock →

Function is locked. Press again to deselect. Repeat to select the function to lock.

■ To Select All Functions
→ → **Select All** →

■ To Deselect All Functions
→ → **Release All** →

5 (three times)

● Lock Category or Group

1 [Lock] window → Select an Original Lock →

2 Select a category (→ → Select a group) → → **Select All** →

■ To Cancel Lock for Category or Group
→ → **Release All** →

3 (→)

● Lock All Categories

1 [Lock] window → Select an Original Lock →

2 → **Select All** →

■ To Cancel Lock for All Categories
→ → **Release All** →

3

● Lock All Group

1 [Lock] window → Select an Original Lock →

2 Select a category →

3 → **Select All** →

■ To Cancel Lock for All Group
→ → **Release All** →

4 (twice)

Disabling Keypad

Set Keypad Lock to automatically lock handset keys when handset is closed or when handset is not operated for a certain period of time.

Setting Keypad Lock

1 → **Settings** → → **Security** → → **Keypad Lock** →

2 Enter Security Code →



3 After Closed or Timer →

→ Select an item → →

■ To Lock When Handset Closed

→ After Closed → → ON →

■ To Lock After Handset Closed a Certain Time

→ Timer → → Select time until lock activates →

■ To Lock by Pressing and Holding

→ Lock Key → → ON →
Pressing and holding with handset closed activates lock.

■ To Require Security Code to Cancel Keypad Lock

→ Security Code → → YES →

4

● When Keypad Lock is Set

All key operations are disabled, except for answering incoming calls and turning power on/off.

When a call arrives or the alarm is activated, appears at the bottom of Display to indicate some keys are operable.

Tip

- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Keypad Lock* is set.

Temporarily Unlocking Keypad Lock

● When Security Code is YES

1 When Keypad Lock is set → Enter Security Code →

● When Security Code is NO

1 Open handset

Alternatively, press and hold .

Tip

- Alternatively, press , or close and reopen handset.

Using Secure Remote Lock

If your handset is lost, lock handset functions remotely from a PC or other mobile phones. Once the lock is set, all key operations are disabled except for turning the power on. For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>), or access My SoftBank from your handset by the following procedure:

→ メニューリスト (Menu List) →
→ My SoftBank →



Using IC Card Authentication

Hold a FeliCa compatible contactless IC card over handset to authenticate the user ID without canceling Dial Lock or Keypad Lock, or without entering a code number.

- IC Card Authentication is available even when IC Card Lock is activated.
- Register up to two contactless IC cards.

Activating IC Card Authentication

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ **Security** ⇒ **IC Card Authentic.** ⇒ Enter Security Code



IC Card Authentication Window

2 **ON** ⇒ **OK**

■ To Activate Registered IC Card

⇒ **ON**

■ To Deactivate Authentication

⇒ **OFF** ⇒ **YES** or **NO**

Select **YES** to delete or **NO** not to delete all registered IC Card data.

■ To Register IC Card

⇒ **New Ext. IC Card**

■ To Delete IC Card Registration

⇒ **Del. Ext. IC Card**

Select IC Card to delete

⇒ **YES**

3 IC Card over handset mark

Once registered, the  on Display disappears.



Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

Incoming calls from hidden and/or unidentified numbers can be rejected.

1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒

Security ⇒ ⇒ **Call Setting W/O ID** ⇒

2 Enter Security Code ⇒

3 **Unknown, Payphone or User Unset** ⇒

4 **Reject** ⇒

■ To Receive Incoming Calls

⇒ **Accept** ⇒ ⇒ **Select Ring Tone or Select Calling Disp.** ⇒

⇒ Select type ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a ringtone or image ⇒

Rejecting Calls from Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Reject Unknown** ⇒

2 Enter Security Code ⇒

3 **Reject** ⇒

■ To Receive Incoming Calls

⇒ **Accept** ⇒

Note

- This procedure is unavailable when *Set Mute Seconds* under *Ring Time (sec.)* is set to *ON* (P. 4-7).

Delaying Ringtone for Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

Delay ringtone, for calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book. It can prevent you from accidentally returning calls to nuisance calls from Received Calls; as missed calls with very short ring times are not saved in Received Calls, when **Missed Calls Display** is set to **Not Display**.

- This procedure is unavailable when *Reject Unknown* is set to *Reject*.

1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Incoming Call Ring Time (sec.)** ⇒

2 **Set Mute Seconds** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ⇒ Enter time before ringtone plays

■ To Set Zero Seconds

⇒ **OFF** ⇒

3 **Missed Calls Display** ⇒ ⇒ **Display or Not Display** ⇒

Tip

- Secret Phone Book entries are also treated as not saved in Phone Book.
- You need not to specify a time when *OFF* is selected.

Emission OFF Mode

The following are prohibited in Emission OFF Mode:

- Incoming/Outgoing Calls
- Incoming/Outgoing Messages
- Yahoo! Keitai Access

1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Emission OFF Mode** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Repeat procedure to cancel Emission OFF Mode.

Tip

- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are available even in Emission OFF Mode.



Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

Activate Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode to view secret Phone Book entries, secret Schedule events and secret files.

Secret Mode: View all data and secret data.

Secret Data Only Mode: Only secret data is available for Phone Book and Schedule, although all data and secret data can be viewed for images, mail, and bookmarks.

Activating Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒

Canceling Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

- 1 In Standby,

Hiding Handset Data

Files stored in Secret Folders are accessible only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is activated.

- The following data can be stored in Secret Folders: Images, videos, received and sent messages, and bookmarks of Yahoo! Keitai and PC Browser.
- Data saved on memory card or USIM Card cannot be stored in Secret Folders.
- Each Secret Folder of Data Folder has a fixed storage capacity as follows:
 - My Picture: Approx. 2 MB
 - Videos: Approx. 10 MB

Storing Data in Secret Folders

- 1 Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode

- 2 In a data list window ⇒ Select a data item ⇒ ⇒ **Keep in Secret** ⇒

Returning Data in Secret Folders to Ordinary Data

- 1 Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode
- 2 In a data folder list window ⇒ **Secret** ⇒
- 3 Select a data item ⇒ ⇒ **Put Out** ⇒
- 4 Select a destination folder ⇒

Tip

- Functions available with Secret Folder data are limited.

Mail



Overview	5-2
Sending Messages	5-3
Sending S! Mail	5-3
Sending SMS Messages	5-5
Receiving & Opening Messages	5-7
Opening New Messages	5-7
Opening Inbox Messages	5-7
Replying to Messages	5-8
Using Mail List	5-8
Handling Messages	5-10
Message Storage Locations	5-10
Opening Sent & Received Messages	5-10
Sorting Messages	5-12
Using Tomomato-Mail	5-12
Prohibiting Access to Messages	5-13
Saving S! Mail Attachments	5-14
Advanced Features	5-16
Sending Messages	5-16
Receiving/Opening Messages	5-20
Managing/Using Messages	5-21

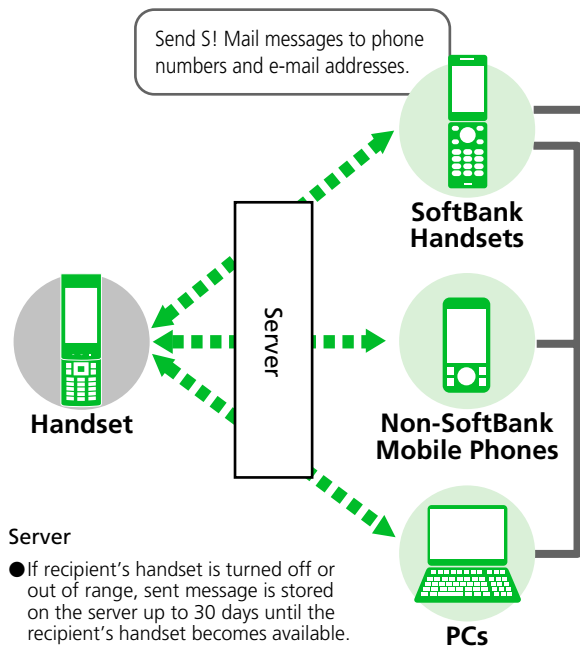
5



Overview

Handset supports S! Mail and SMS.

5
Mail



Available Mail Services

SMS

Exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail (Separate contract required)

Exchange long text messages with S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets and other e-mail compatible mobile phones and PCs. Images and melodies can also be attached to S! Mail.

Customize Handset E-mail Address.
Effective for blocking spam.

Graphic Mail

Use HTML mail to change font size/color, background, etc.

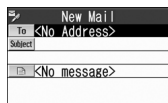
Emotion-Expressing Mail

Based on sender's message, handset shows a pictogram matching the sender's mood.



Sending S! Mail

1 Press and hold



Composition Window

2 Select address field

Enter Address

Enter address

■ Adding Recipients

Select address field

Select address field **Enter**

Address Enter address

3 Select Subject field

Enter subject

If (double-byte mode) appears, switch to single-byte mode (P. 2-31).

Tip

- Add up to 20 recipients total between To, Cc and Bcc fields.

4 Select text field

Enter text



Text Entry Window

5

■ To Cancel Transmission

When **Start Packet Connection** appears ; or

During Transmission

■ If **Resend mail?** Appears

YES

Attaching Files

Attach the following files to S! Mail:

- Images
- Videos
- Melodies
- Music (Songs)
- Books
- Widget
- Phone Book entries
- Account Details
- Schedule
- To Do List
- Bookmarks

- For information about image, video, melody and music files, see P. 12-2.

1 [Composition] window

Attach File

2 Select a file type

(**Enter Security Code**

) **Select a file**

■ Images with Large File Size

Attach Mail, QVGA Scale down or **VGA Scale down**

■ Attach Additional Files

Repeat steps 1 and 2 above

■ Open an Attached File

Select an attached file



5-4

- Copy protected files cannot be sent as attachments or output to external devices.

Create html messages to change font color/size and background color. Add scrolling text, paste images, etc.

<Example> Change font size, background color, insert an image and set flashing text.

- 1 [Text Entry] window → 
 →  →  → Select a font
 size →  → Enter text → 

- 2  $\Rightarrow$  $\Rightarrow$  to select a background color $\Rightarrow$ 

- **To Toggle Color Palettes**
 - ➡ In Background color window ➡
 - 
 - Toggle between 25-color and 256-color palettes.

-      **Select a folder**

   **Select an image** 


- Inserting Images with Large File Size**

 *Insert Mail or SubQCIF Scale*

down  
-        

Enter text   **(twice)** 

      
-   

Group addresses into Blog/Mail
Member list to upload blog images
and send messages by group.

- Set one Blog/Mail Member as a blog upload destination.

- 1 MENU ➡ Own Data ➡ ☐ ➡ Blog/Mail Member ➡ ☐

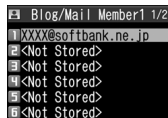


Blog/Mail Member List

- To Specify as Blog Upload Destination**
 ➡ Select Blog/Mail Member ➡ 
 Blog/Mail Member “★” specified as upload destination appears.
- To Cancel Blog Upload Destination**
 ➡ Select Blog/Mail Member with
 “★” ➡ 



2 Select a Blog/Mail Member list →



Blog/Mail Member Window

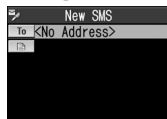
3 <Not Stored> → → Enter address →

- To Save an Address from Phone Book or Sent/Received Address List
→ <Not Stored> → → Look-up Address → → Phone Book, Sent Address or Received Address
→ → Select an address →
 (twice)

Sending SMS Messages

Send short text messages to SoftBank handsets, specifying phone numbers as address.

1 → Compose SMS →



SMS Composition Window

2 To → → Enter Address → → Enter phone number →

3 → → Enter text →

4

More Features

Advanced

Composing Messages

- Enter Address from Phone Book
- Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List
- Specify Blog/Mail Member List Recipients
- Set To, Cc or Bcc
- Delete an Address
- Insert Header/Signature
- Enter My Pictograms
- Delete Text
- Change SMS Message to S! Mail

▶ P. 5-16

Sending Messages

- Set Priority (S! Mail)
- Server Storage Period (SMS)
- Check Delivery
- Save a Message to Draft without Transmitting It
- Delete a Message without Transmitting It

▶ P. 5-17



Sending Messages

Attaching Files

- Shoot an Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail
- Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

(▶ P. 5-18)

Blog/Mail Member

- Edit an Address
- Delete Addresses from a Blog/Mail Member List
- Edit a Blog/Mail Member List Name
- Reset a Blog/Mail Member List Name

(▶ P. 5-18)

Graphic Mail

- Apply Effects to Entered Text
- Change Effects
- Cancel Last Applied Effect
- Preview Graphic Mail
- Cancel All Effects
- Create Graphic Mail Automatically
- Save Graphic Mail as a Template
- Download Templates
- Create Graphic Mail from a Template
- Edit a Template
- Edit Title of a Template
- Delete Templates

(▶ P. 5-18)



Customize

S! Mail Settings

- Edit Header/Signature
- Insert Header/Signature Automatically
- Set to Check Delivery

(▶ P. 14-21)

SMS Settings

- Set to Check Delivery
- Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages
- Set SMS Input Language

(▶ P. 14-21)



Receiving & Opening Messages

Opening New Messages

Received Result window opens for new messages.

By default, complete S! Mail messages (including attachments) are automatically retrieved. Transmission fees apply, depending on your subscription plan. While traveling abroad, message retrieval may incur high transmission fees.

● Emotion-Expressing Mail

When an S! Mail is received, a pictogram matching the message content appears.

If a message contains a specific keyword, a corresponding indicator appears (P. 14-22).



Indicator

Received Result Window

● Indicators

	Urgent		Advice
	Love		Try Hard
	Hate		Invitation
	Happy		Feedback
	Angry		Request
	Sad		Announcement
	Fun		OK
	Surprise		Reply
	Question		Information

— appears if message content does not match any of the above moods or information.

1 [Received Result] window → Mail → ■

2 Select a message → ■

Tip

- Alternatively open new messages from desktop notification.
- Indicator may not always correspond to message content.

Opening Inbox Messages

1 [Inbox] → Inbox → ■



Folder List

2 Select a folder → ■



Message List



3 Select a message →



Message Window

■ To Check Previous/Next Message
→

Tip

- Use or to scroll.
- Some attachments may require content keys to open/play the file.

Replying to Messages

1 [Inbox Message List] window → Select a message
→ →

■ When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients
→ To Sender or To All →

2 Edit subject/text →

Replying (Quote Message)

1 [Inbox Message List] window → Select a message
→ →

2 Edit subject/text →

Tip

- Attachments are automatically deleted from reply messages.
- Quoting text is only available for S! Mail replies.

Using Mail List

Retrieve Mail List and select messages to download or forward.

1 → **Server Mail** → → **Mail List** → (→ **YES** →)



Mail List

2 Select a message → → **Message Receive** → → **Receive This** →

■ To Receive Multiple Messages
→ → **Message Receive** →
→ **Receive Selected** → →



Receiving & Opening Messages

■ To Receive All Messages

⇒ ⇒ **Message Receive** ⇒

⇒ **Receive All** ⇒

Tip

- If download fails while retrieving all messages, download is canceled.
- When there is only one message, message opens upon retrieval.

More Features

Advanced

Receiving Messages

- Manually Retrieve Messages

(▶ P. 5-20)

Checking Messages

- Retrieve Complete S! Mail
- Delete S! Mail from Server
- Read Out Messages
- Check Message Information

(▶ P. 5-20)

Server Message Operations

- Update Mail List
- Switch Mail List Views
- Check Server Message Information
- Forward a Server Message
- Delete Server Messages
- Check Server Memory Status

(▶ P. 5-20)

Customize

Incoming Message Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Ringing Duration of Incoming Message Ringtone
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Open New Mail Window by Opening Handset.

(▶ P. 14-10)

Incoming Message Settings

- Customize E-mail Address
- Do Not Show Emotion Indicators
- Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation
- Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages
- Set Voice to Read Out Messages
- Set Manual Retrieval of S! Mail only after Notification

(▶ P. 14-22)

Reply Settings

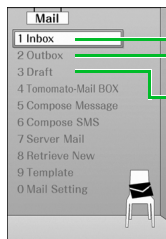
- Change Quotation Marks

(▶ P. 14-23)



Message Storage Locations

Press to open Mail Main Menu.
Sent, received and draft messages are saved in the locations below.



Message Menu

Received messages

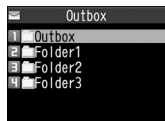
Sent messages

Draft messages

Opening Sent & Received Messages

<Example> Open a Sent Message

1 → **Outbox** →



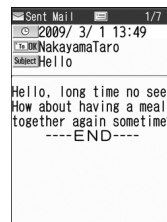
Folder List

2 →



Message List

3 Select a message →



Message Window

To Check Previous/Next Message
→

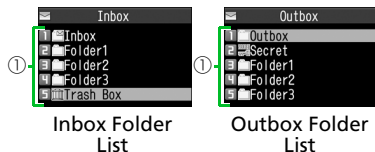
Tip

- When Outbox/Inbox becomes full, Trash Box messages and then the oldest messages in Outbox/Inbox are deleted next time a new message is sent/received. Unread and protected messages and Secret Folder messages are not deleted.

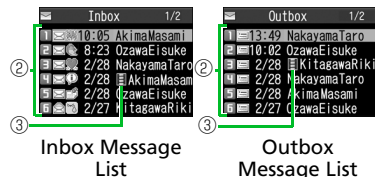


Mail Windows

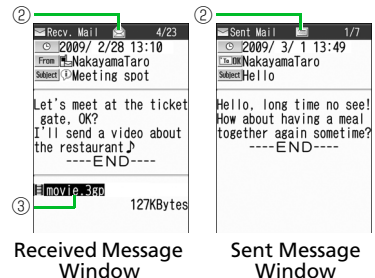
Message types, statuses, and attached file types are shown by indicators.



Message List Windows



Message Windows



①	Folder Type General Folder Trash Box Folder Secret Folder
②	Message Status Unread Received Message Read Received Message Protected Unread Message Forwarded Message Replied Message Message Sent to a Single Recipient Message Sent to Multiple Recipients
③	Message Type/Attached File Type SMS on Handset SMS on USIM Card S! Mail with Text Unreceived Image Attached/Image Inserted in Text Video Attached Melody Attached Song Attached Copyright-protected File Attached Phone Book Entry, Schedule Event or Bookmark Attached Widget Attached E-comic Attached Forwarded Server Message Other Type of File Attached Multiple Files Attached

The following marks appear on indicators to inform you:

- Folder Contains Unread Messages
- Locked Folder
- Folder with Auto Sort Set
- Protected Message
- Delivery failed to Some Recipients or Some Attachments Deleted
- Delivery Failed/All Attachments Deleted
- Attachment Deleted
- High Priority Message

Tip

- Copyright-protected files cannot be opened/played unless they are saved in Data Folder.
- If Delivery Report was received, **Subject** appears in field of message.



Sorting Messages

Automatically sort incoming/outgoing messages into folders.

- 1 [Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Auto-sort** →

■ When Auto Sort is Already Set to the Folder
→ Select another criterion →

- 2 **Address Sort** → → **Look-up Address, Look-up Group, Look-up Member or Enter Address** →

■ To Sort by Subject
→ **Subject Sort** → → Enter subject →

■ To Sort Messages Failed to be Replied/Sent
→ **Reply Impossible** or **Send Impossible** →

■ To Sort Addresses Not Stored in Phone Book
→ **Unregistered Add.** →

Tip

- Only one Inbox folder can be specified for sorting *Reply impossible* messages.
- Only one Outbox folder can be specified for sorting *Send impossible* messages.
- Search addresses from Phone Book, Received Address List, or Sent Address List in Look-up address.

Canceling Auto Sort

- 1 [Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Auto-sort** →

- 2 Select a criterion → → **Release** →

- 3 **Release This** → → **YES** →

■ To Cancel Multiple Criteria
→ **Release Selected** → →
Select criteria → → → **YES** →

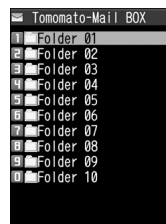
■ To Cancel All Criteria
→ **Release All** → → **YES** →

Using Tomomato-Mail

Store e-mail addresses in Tomomato-Mail and check messages with stored addresses by selecting Tomomato-Mail BOX.

Checking Tomomato-Mail

- 1 → **Tomomato-Mail BOX** →



Tomomato-Mail Folder List Window

- 2 Select a folder



Storing Tomomato-Mail

- 1 [Tomomato-Mail Folder List] window → Select a folder → → Enter Address →

Enter Address →

■ To Store E-Mail Address From Phone Book or Sent/Received Address List
 → Select a folder → → *Phonebook, Sent Address or Received Address* → → Select a address →

Canceling Tomomato-Mail

- 1 [Tomomato-Mail Folder List] window → Select a folder → → **Unregister** → → **YES** →

Prohibiting Access to Messages

Setting Mail Box Lock

- 1 → **Mail Setting** → → **Mail Box Lock** → → Enter Security Code →

- 2 Select a mail box →
 Repeat step 2 to specify other boxes.

- 3

Setting Folder Lock

- 1 [Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Folder Lock** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →
 Locked folders are indicated by

Tip

- Repeat the same procedure to cancel mail box and folder lock.
- Trash Box folder can also be locked.
- Security Code entry is required to view messages in locked mail boxes and folders.

Storing Messages in Secret Folders

Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand (P. 4-8).

- Unread Messages cannot be stored in Secret Folders.

- 1 [Message List] window → Select a message → → **Keep in Secret** →

- 2 **Keep This** →

■ To Store Multiple Messages
 → **Keep Selected** → → Select a message → → Repeat the same step to specify other messages → → **YES** →

■ To Store All Messages in a Folder
 → **Keep All** → → **YES** →



●Returning Messages in Secret Folders to Ordinary Messages

① [Folder List] ⇒ **Secret** ⇒

② Select a message ⇒ ⇒ **Put Out** ⇒

③ **Put Out This** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒

■To Return Multiple Messages
⇒ **Put Out Selected** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a message ⇒ ⇒ Repeat the same step to specify other messages ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

■To Return All Messages
⇒ **Put Out All** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Saving S! Mail Attachments

Saving Image, Video, Melody, Music and Flash® Files

① [Message] window ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ **Save Data** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

② Select a folder ⇒

■To Set an Image as Wallpaper, etc.
⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒

Select **NO** and press when you do not want to set the image.

■To Set a Melody as Ringtone, etc.
⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒

Select **NO** and press when you do not want to set the melody.

Saving an Image Inserted in Text

① [Message] window ⇒ ⇒ **Save Insert Image** ⇒

② Select an image ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒

③ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒

■When You Do Not Want to Set the Image
⇒ **NO** ⇒

Saving a Phone Book Entry

① [Message] window ⇒ Select contact information (a phone number, etc.) ⇒ (twice) ⇒ **Phone** or **USIM** ⇒ ⇒ **New** ⇒

② Edit each item ⇒

Saving a Schedule Event

① [Message] window ⇒ Select Schedule data ⇒ (twice)

Saving a Bookmark

① [Message] window ⇒ Select a link (URL, etc.) ⇒ (twice) ⇒ Select a destination ⇒ (⇒ Select a folder ⇒)

Note

- Mail-attached bookmarks cannot be saved to *microSD*.



More Features

Advanced

Managing Messages

- Protect a Message
- Move Messages to a Different Folder
- Drop Messages into Trash Box
- Delete Messages
- Delete All Read Messages
- Delete All Delivery Reports
- Delete Attached Files
- Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card
- Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card
- Change Message Color
- Add a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Delete a Folder
- Check Number of Saved Messages
- Check Sent/Received Addresses
- Delete All Messages in Tomomato-Mail Folder

(▶ P. 5-21)

Using Messages

- Edit a Sent Message
- Edit & Send a Draft Message
- Forward a Message

- Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book
- Call a Phone Number in Text
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text
- Access the Internet from a URL in Text
- Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book
- Search for Information by Keyword
- Switch Subject Field Views
- Change Font Size of Text
- Search for Messages in a Folder
- Sort Messages
- Filter Messages
- Reset Message List View to Default
- Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages
- Open S! Mail Delivery Report

(▶ P. 5-24)

Customize

Message View Settings & Others

- Set Message List View
- Play Attached Melodies Automatically
- Set Number of Text Lines to Scroll
- Set Font Size of Text
- Check Mail Settings
- Reset Mail Settings

(▶ P. 14-23)



Sending Messages

Start Here

[Composition] window P. 5-3
 [Text Entry] window P. 5-3
 [Blog/Mail Member List] P. 5-4
 [Blog/Mail Member] window P. 5-5
 [SMS Composition] window P. 5-5

Composing Messages

Enter Address from Phone Book

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → →
 → **Phonebook** → → Select
 search method → Select an entry
 → → Select an e-mail address
 or phone number →

Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → →
 → **Sent Address** or **Received Address** → → Select an e-mail
 address/phone number →
 (twice)
 Alternatively, select and press to open Sent/Received Address List.

Specify Blog/Mail Member List Recipients

[Composition] window → →
 → **Blog/Mail Member** → →
 Select a Blog/Mail Member list →

 All addresses in the selected Blog/Mail Member list are entered in the address field.
 You must save addresses to a Blog/Mail Member list in advance.

Set To, Cc or Bcc

[Composition] window → →
 → Select an address → →
Change Rcv. Type → → **To, Cc**
 or **Bcc** →
 Cc (Carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Cc field are revealed to the other recipients.
 Bcc (Blind carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Bcc field are hidden to the other recipients.
 When there is no address in the To field, the message cannot be sent.

Delete an Address

[Composition] window → →
 → Select an address → →
Delete Receiver → → **YES** →



Advanced Features

Insert Header/Signature

[Composition] window →  → **Add Header** or **Add Signature** →



Save header/signature in advance.

Enter My Pictograms

[Text Entry] window → Press and hold  → Select a pictograph →



CLEAR

Toggle categories by pressing  or .

My Pictograms are only available for S! Mails.

Delete Text

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window →  → **Erase Message** →  → **YES** → 

Change SMS Message to S! Mail

[SMS Composition] window →  → **S! Mail Conversion** → 

Sending Messages

Set Priority (S! Mail)

[Composition] window →  → **Priority** →  → **High, Normal** or **Low** → 

Server Storage Period (SMS)

[SMS Composition] window →  → **SMS Valid. Per.** →  → Select a period → 

Specify a period the SMS message is stored in the server in case it fails to reach the recipient because the recipient's handset is out of range, etc.

When **None** is set, the SMS message is deleted from the server after it is resent once in a certain period of time.

Check Delivery

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window →  → **Delivery Report** or **SMS Report Req.** →  → **ON** or **OFF** → 

When **ON** is set, handset receives a delivery report.

Save a Message to Draft without Transmitting It

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window →  → **Save** → 

The message is saved to Draft. Messages saved in Draft can be edited and sent at a later time.

Delete a Message without Transmitting It

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window →  → **Delete** →  → **YES** → 



Attaching Files

Shoot an Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail

[Composition] window → → **Activate Camera** → → **Photo Mode** or **Movie Mode** → → Shoot image/video →

Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

[Composition] window → Select an attached file → → **Delete Att. File** or **Del All Att. Files** → → YES →

Blog/Mail Member

Edit an Address

[Blog/Mail Member] window → Select an address → → **Edit Address** → → Edit address →

Delete Addresses from a Blog/Mail Member List

[Blog/Mail Member] → Select an address →

- To Select *Delete this* → *Delete this* → → YES →
- To Select *Delete all* → *Delete all* → → Enter Security Code → → YES →

Edit a Blog/Mail Member List Name

[Blog/Mail Member List] → Select a Blog/Mail Member list → → **Edit Member Name** → → Edit name →

Reset a Blog/Mail Member List Name

[Blog/Mail Member List] → Select a Blog/Mail Member list → → **Reset Member Name** → → YES →

Graphic Mail

Apply Effects to Entered Text

[Text Entry] window → → → → Select beginning of characters → → Select end of characters → → Select effects menu → → Apply an effects → Select and press to select the entire text.

Change Effects

[Text Entry] window → → → → Select beginning of characters → → Select end of characters → → Select effects menu → → Change effects → Select and press to select the entire text.

Cancel Last Applied Effect

[Text Entry] window → → →



Advanced Features

Preview Graphic Mail

[Text Entry] window → → → → or to close preview

Cancel All Effects

[Text Entry] window → → → → YES → (→)

Create Graphic Mail Automatically

[Text Entry] window → Enter text → → → → to toggle effects →

Emotion of the message is detected from the entered text, and a set of effects that matches the emotion is automatically applied.

Save Graphic Mail as a Template

[Text Entry] window → Enter text → → → **Template** → → **Save Template** → → YES →

Attached files except images inserted in text are not included in a template. Save up to 45 templates including downloads. Delete saved templates as needed.

Download Templates

→ **Template** → → **Download Templates** → (twice) → Follow onscreen instructions

Create Graphic Mail from a Template

→ **Template** → → Select a template → →

Edit a Template

→ **Template** → → Select a template → → → **Edit** → → Edit text → (twice) → YES →

Edit Title of a Template

→ **Template** → → Select a template → → **Edit Title** → → Edit title →

Delete Templates

→ **Template** → → Select a template → → **Delete** →

- To Select *Delete This* → **Delete This** → → YES →
- To Select *Delete Selected* → **Delete Selected** → → Select templates → → → YES →
- To Select *Delete All* → **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → YES →



Receiving/Opening Messages

Start Here

[Message List]	P. 5-7
[Message] window	P. 5-8
[Mail List]	P. 5-8

Receiving Messages

Manually Retrieve Messages

☑ ➡ **Retrieve New** ➡ ■ ➡
Received Result window opens ➡
Mail ➡ ■ ➡ Select a message ➡
■

☞ Press **[Y]** or press and hold **[CLEAR]** to cancel message retrieval.

☞ Retrieve messages that were stored on the server while handset was off or out of range.

Checking Messages

Retrieve Complete S! Mail

☑ ➡ **Inbox** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a folder ➡ ■ ➡ Select an S! Mail notification ➡ ■ ➡ ☑

☞ An S! Mail notification is deleted when you retrieve the message text.

☞ Use this procedure when **Message Download** under **S! Mail Settings** is set to **Manual**.

Delete S! Mail from Server

☑ ➡ **Inbox** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a folder ➡ ■ ➡ Select an S! Mail notification ➡ ■ ➡ ☑ ➡ **Delete** ➡ ■ ➡ **Notification, Server Mail** or **Notifi./Server** ➡ ■ ➡ **YES** ➡ ■

Read Out Messages

[Message] window ➡ ☑ ➡ **Read Out Message** ➡ ■

☞ Press ■ to stop reading.

☞ Press ☑ to end reading.

Check Message Information

[Message List] ➡ ☑ ➡ **Mail Info** ➡ ■

☞ This procedure is available only in Inbox Message List window.

Server Message Operations

Update Mail List

[Mail List] ➡ ☑ ➡ **Mail List** ➡ ■

Switch Mail List Views

[Mail List] ➡ ☑ ➡ **List Setting** ➡ ■ ➡ **Subject, Name** or **Address** ➡ ■



Advanced Features

Check Server Message Information

[Mail List] → Select a message →
☐ → **Mail Info** → ☐

Forward a Server Message

[Mail List] → Select a message →
☐ → **Forward** → ☐ → **To** → ☐
 → Enter address → ☐

Delete Server Messages

[Mail List] → Select a message →
☐ → **Delete** → ☐

- To Select *Delete This*
 → **Delete This** → ☐ → **YES** → ☐
- To Select *Delete Selected*
 → **Delete Selected** → ☐ → Select
 messages → ☐ → ☐ → **YES** → ☐
- To Select *Delete All*
 → **Delete All** → ☐ → Enter Security
 Code → ☐ → **YES** → ☐

Check Server Memory Status

☐ → **Server Mail** → ☐ → **Server
Mail Memory** → ☐

Managing/Using Messages

Start Here

[Folder List] P. 5-10
 [Message List] P. 5-10
 [Message] window P. 5-10
 [Inbox Folder List] P. 5-11
 [Inbox Message List] P. 5-11
 [Received Message] window .. P. 5-11
 [Sent Message] window P. 5-11
 [Tomomato-Mail Folder List] window
 P. 5-12

Managing Messages

Protect a Message

[Message] window → ☐ →
Protect ON/OFF → ☐

☐ If a message is protected, this
 procedure cancels protection.

Move Messages to a Different Folder

[Message List] → Select a message
 → ☐ → **Move** → ☐ → **Move This,
Move Selected or Move All** → ☐
 → Select a destination folder → ☐
 (→ Select messages → ☐ → ☐ → **YES** → ☐

☐ A message can also be moved to a
 different folder from Message
 window.

Drop Messages into Trash Box

[Message List] → ☐ → **Move to
Trash Box** → ☐ → Select a
 message → ☐ → ☐ → **YES** → ☐

☐ Protected messages and delivery
 reports cannot be moved to Trash Box.



Delete Messages

[Folder List] → [P] → **Delete All** → [■] → Enter Security Code → [■] → **YES** → [■]

[Message List] → Select a message → [P] → **Delete** → [■]

- To Select *Delete This* → **Delete This** → [■] → **YES** → [■]
- To Select *Delete Selected* → **Delete Selected** → [■] → Select messages → [■] → [☑] → **YES** → [■]
- To Select *Delete All* → **Delete All** → [■] → Enter Security Code → [■] → **YES** → [■]

ⓘ Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Read Messages

[Inbox Folder List] → [P] → **Delete Read** → [■] → **YES** → [■]

[Inbox Message List] window → [P] → **Delete** → [■] → **Delete Read** → [■] → **YES** → [■]

ⓘ Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Delivery Reports

[Inbox Message List] → [P] → **Delete** → [■] → **Delete All Reports** → [■] → Enter Security Code → [■] → **YES** → [■]

ⓘ Protected delivery reports cannot be deleted.

Delete Attached Files

[Message] window (→ Select attached files) → [P] → **Delete Att. File** or **Del All Att. Files** → [■] → **YES** → [■]

Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card

[MENU] → **Tools** → [■] → **USIM Operation** → [■] → Enter Security Code → [■] → **Copy** → [■] → **Phone→USIM** or **USIM→Phone** → [■] → **SMS** → [■] → **Inbox** or **Outbox** → [■] → Select a folder → [■] → Select an SMS message → [■] → [☑] → **YES** → [■]

Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card

[MENU] → **Tools** → [■] → **USIM Operation** → [■] → Enter Security Code → [■] → **Delete** → [■] → **USIM** → [■] → **SMS** → [■] → **Inbox** or **Outbox** → [■] → Select a folder → [■] → Select an SMS message → [■] → [☑] → **YES** → [■]

Change Message Color

[Message List] → Select a message → Press and hold [✱]

ⓘ Each time you press and hold [✱], the message color toggles as follows: Red → Blue → Black



Add a Folder

[Folder List] → → **Add Folder**
 → → Enter folder name →
 → **YES** → → **Address Sort,**
Subject Sort, Reply Impossible,
Send Impossible or Unregistered
Add. → → Make auto Sort
 settings → → **YES** or **NO** →

Select **NO** and press when you do
 not want to make Auto Sort settings to
 the folder.

Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] → Select a folder →
 → **Edit Folder Name** → →
 Edit folder name →

Preinstalled folders cannot be
 renamed.

Change Order of Folders

[Folder List] → Select a folder →
 → **Sort Folder** → → Select a
 position →

The order of preinstalled folders
 cannot be changed.

Delete a Folder

[Folder List] → Select a folder →
 → **Delete Folder** → → Enter
 Security Code → → **YES** →

Folders containing protected
 messages and preinstalled folders
 cannot be deleted.

This procedure also deletes messages
 stored in the folder.

Auto Sort settings are also canceled
 when you delete a folder with Auto
 Sort settings.

Check Number of Saved Messages

[Folder List] / [Message List] →
 → **No. of Messages** →

The total number of messages, and
 the number of unread and protected
 messages in a folder can be checked
 from Folder List.

The number of messages in a folder
 can be checked from Message List
 window.

Check Sent/Received Addresses

Press and hold or press and
 hold → Select an entry →

Delete All Messages in Tomomato-Mail Folder

[Tomomato-Mail Folder List]
 window → Select folder → →
Del All in Folder → Enter Security
 Code → → **YES** →



Using Messages

Edit a Sent Message

✉ ⇒ **Outbox** ⇒ ■ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ■ ⇒ Select a sent message ⇒ ✉ ⇒ Edit address, subject and text ⇒ ✉

Edit & Send a Draft Message

✉ ⇒ **Draft** ⇒ ■ ⇒ Select a message ⇒ ■ ⇒ Edit address, subject and text ⇒ ✉

Forward a Message

[Received Message] window ⇒ ■ ⇒ **Reply/Forward** ⇒ ■ ⇒ **Forward** ⇒ ■ (twice) ⇒ Enter address ⇒ ✉

- ✋ The subject and text can also be edited.
- ✋ Files attached to/inserted in S! Mails are also forwarded.

Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book

[Message] window ⇒ ■ ⇒ **Address List** ⇒ Select an e-mail address/phone number ⇒ ■ ⇒ **Save Address** ⇒ ■ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ■ ⇒ **Phone** or **USIM** ⇒ ■ ⇒ Select saving option ⇒ ■ (⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ■) ⇒ Edit each item ⇒ ✉

- ✋ Select an address to save to Phone Book when the message has multiple recipients.

Call a Phone Number in Text

[Message] window ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ ■ ⇒ **Voice Phone** or **Video Call** ⇒ ■ ⇒ **Dial** ⇒ ■

Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text

[Message] window ⇒ Select an e-mail address ⇒ ■ ⇒ Compose S! Mail ⇒ ✉

Access the Internet from a URL in Text

[Message] window ⇒ Select a URL ⇒ ■ ⇒ **Yahoo! Keitai** or **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ■



Advanced Features

Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book

[Message] window → Select an e-mail address/phone number →

→ **Save Address** →

Phonebook →

- Save to Handset

→ **Phone** → Select store method → Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → Edit items → (→ YES or NO →) (→ Enter entry number →)

- To Save to USIM Card

→ **USIM** → Select store method → Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → Edit items → (→ Overwrite or Add →) (→ YES or NO →)

Search for Information by Keyword

[Message] window → Quick Search →

Enter keyword →

Enter keyword →

or **BROWSER** → Select an item from search results →

To select a keyword from previous entries, select **History**, press, select a keyword, and then press.

Switch Subject Field Views

[Message List] → Press and hold

#

When Mail List Disp. is set to **2 Lines**, view toggles in the order Name → Address.

When **Mail List Disp.** is set to **1 Line**, or to **1 Line+Body**, the view cycles as follows: Subject → Name → Address

Change Font Size of Text

[Message] window → Press and hold

Search for Messages in a Folder

[Message List] → **Search Mail** → **Search Sender**, **Search Receiver** or **Search Subject**

(→ Select a search criterion →) (→ Select an address, enter address or subject →)

Narrow down search results by repeating the search operation.

Sort Messages

[Message List] → **Sort** → Select a criterion →

This procedure can be combined with the **Filter** operation below.

Filter Messages

[Message List] → **Filter** → Select a criterion →

This procedure can be combined with the **Sort** operation above.



Reset Message List View to Default

[Message List] →  → *Display All*
→ 

 This procedure returns the message list view that has been changed by search, sort or filter operation to its original view.

Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages

[Inbox Message List] →  → *Read All* →  → *YES* → 

Open S! Mail Delivery Report

[Outbox Message] window → 
→ *Disp. Report* → 

 Only available in Message window of a sent message with a requested delivery report.

Internet



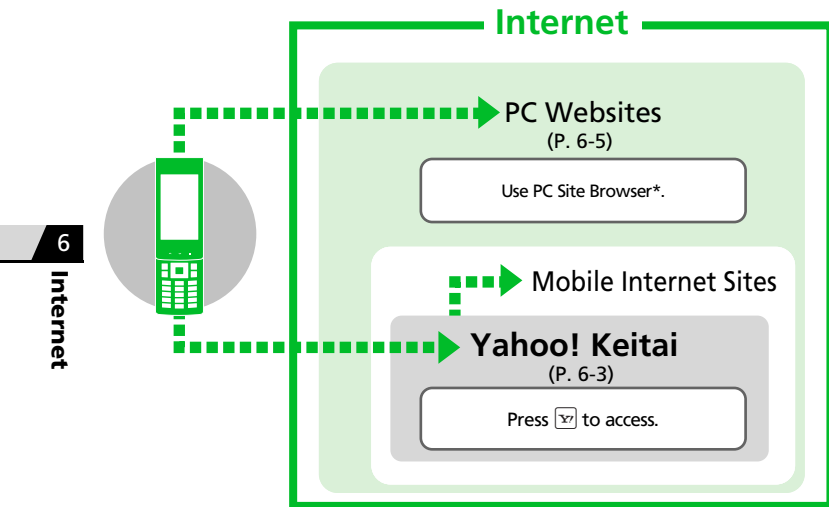
Overview	6-2
Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
PC Site Browser	6-5
PC Site Browser	6-5
Connecting to PC Websites	6-5
Page Operations	6-8
Navigating Pages	6-8
Open Linked Page in Multi Window	6-8
Jumping to Next or Previous Page	6-8
Selecting Links and Other Items	6-9
Playing Streaming Music and Video	6-9
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	6-11
Using Bookmarks	6-11
Using Saved Pages	6-11
Advanced Features	6-13
Connecting to the Internet	6-13
Page Operations	6-14
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	6-17

6



Overview

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Browse PC websites using PC Site Browser.



- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage.
SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS.

* When **Warning Messages** is set to **ON**, an alert appears each time handset connects to a website using PC Site Browser.

Transmission & Information Fees

Some web contents automatically connect to different pages incurring transmission fees.
Information fees may also apply.

About Security

Handset supports SSL/TLS (encryption protocols for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information). Root certificates necessary to use SSL/TLS are saved on handset by default.



Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai

1



Web Page

2 Select an item

Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.

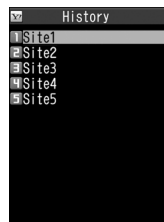
3 to exit the Internet
YES

Tip

- Scroll web pages with or if *Scroll* is On for *Touch Sensor Setting*.

Using Access History

1 Press and hold **History**



History List

2 Select a record

Entering URLs

1 Press and hold **Enter**
URL



Enter URL Window

2 **<NEW>** **Enter URL**
 OK

Tip

- A confirmation for SSL/TLS communication appears each time a secure page is opened. appears in SSL/TLS compatible pages.
- Some pages require user authentication. Select text entry field and enter your user ID or password.



More Features

Advanced

Yahoo! Keitai

- Switch to PC Site Browser
- Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

(▶ P. 6-13)

History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(▶ P. 6-13)

Entering URLs

- Access a Page from an Entered URL Record
- Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record
- Send an Entered URL Record by Mail
- Delete Entered URL Records

(▶ P. 6-13)

Root Certificates

- Check Certificate Details
- Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

(▶ P. 6-14)

Customize

Internet

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

(▶ P. 14-25)



PC Site Browser

View PC websites using PC Site Browser. Scroll up, down, left, or right to view entire page.

- You may not be able to view as you want depending on the site.
- Note that transmission fees may be expensive for pages with large amounts of data.



①	Tabs One for each title/URL appears when viewing several pages in Multi Window.
②	Page Toggle Appears when viewing several pages. Toggle pages with
③	Layout Display Appears when using PC Site Browser.
④	New Window Open link in a new window.

About Page Layout

When using PC Site Browser, two page layout types are available for each of PC Screen and Small Screen:

PC Screen: Scroll pages vertically and horizontally.

Small Screen: Scroll pages vertically. Pages are laid out to fit Display width.

Connecting to PC Websites

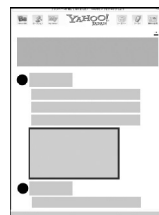
- 1 Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒



PC Site Browser Menu

- 2 **Home** ⇒ (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒) ⇒ **Select an item** ⇒

Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.



Web Page



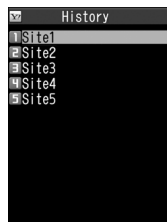
- 3 to exit the Internet ⇒
YES ⇒

Tip

- Scroll web pages with or if *Scroll is On* for *Touch Sensor Setting*.

Using URL History

- 1 [PC Site Browser Menu] ⇒
History ⇒



History List

- 2 Select a record ⇒ (⇒ YES or NO ⇒)

Entering URLs

- 1 [PC Site Browser Menu] ⇒
Enter URL ⇒



Enter URL Window

- 2 <NEW> ⇒ ⇒ Enter URL ⇒
 ⇒ OK ⇒ (⇒ YES or NO
⇒)

More Features

Advanced

PC Site Browser

- Switch Page Layout Types
- Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

(▶ P. 6-13)

History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(▶ P. 6-13)

Entering URLs

- Access a Page from an Entered URL Record
- Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record
- Send an Entered URL Record by Mail
- Delete Entered URL Records

(▶ P. 6-13)

Customize

Internet

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet



PC Site Browser

- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

(▶ P. 14-25)

PC Site Browser

- Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers

(▶ P. 14-26)



Navigating Pages

Scrolling Pages

If a page extends beyond view, use to scroll page.

Viewing Frames

When a page includes multiple frames, select frames to view.

1 to select a frame

2 ⇒ **Frame In** ⇒

Navigate through the frame as you would a page.

■ To Exit Frames

⇒ ⇒ **Frame Out** ⇒

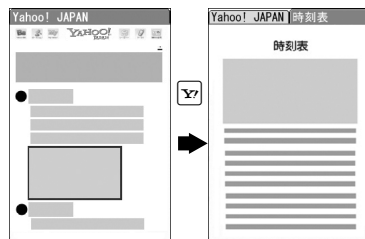
Open Linked Page in Multi Window

Open up to five pages simultaneously. Press to toggle pages.

1 [Web Page] ⇒ Select a link

⇒

The linked page appears in a new window.



Multi Window

■ To Toggle Page

⇒

The page toggles each time you press .

■ To Close Opened Page

⇒ CLEAR ⇒ YES ⇒

Tip

- Use the following procedure to open pages in Multi Window other than linked pages.
⇒ ⇒ **Window Operation** ⇒
⇒ **Open New Window** ⇒ ⇒ **Bookmark, Enter URL (Yahoo! Keitai or Home)** ⇒ ⇒ Specify page to open ⇒

Jumping to Next or Previous Page

Once opened pages are stored in a temporary storage area (cache). Press , select **History Back** or **History Forward** and press to go back to the previous page or proceed to the next page, without connecting to the network as long as the pages are stored in the cache.

- Network connection is made when the cache is full.



Selecting Links and Other Items

Operate as follows when buttons and menus appear in web pages.

①	Link Select a link and press ☐ to access the linked page.
②	Text Box Select a text box and press ☐ to open a text entry window to enter text.
③	Pull-down Menu Select a pull-down menu and press ☐ to open a list of options. Use ☐ to select an item and press ☐ .

④	Radio Button Use ☐ and press ☐ to select only one item from a range of options. ☒ indicates the item is selected.
⑤	Checkbox Use ☐ and press ☐ to select multiple items from a range of options. ☒ indicates the item is selected.
⑥	Command Button Select a command button and press ☐ to activate the assigned function.

Playing Streaming Music and Video

Play music and videos appearing on a page as you download (streaming).

- Downloaded data is not stored.
- See P. 9-5 for details on using Music Player.

- 1 [Web Page] → Select music or video → ☐
- 2 YES → ☐

Once downloading starts, Music Player activates and play starts.

■ To Adjust Volume



■ To Pause



Press ☐ again to continue.

Note

- Packet transmission fees are incurred during streaming even if you pause play.
- Note that expensive packet transmission fees may be incurred.



More Features



Advanced

Page Operations

- Reload Page
- Save Images/Melodies in a Page
- Save Background Image of a Page
- Send URL of a Page by Mail
- Call a Phone Number in a Page
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page
- Access Another Page from a URL in a Page
- Save a Phone Number/E-mail Address in a Page to Phone Book
- Search for Information by Keyword
- Change Font Size of a Page
- Zoom Page In/Out
- Jump to Top/End of a Page
- Change Character Code of a Page
- Play Flash® from the Beginning
- Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page
- Show Key Guidance

(▶ P. 6-14)



Customize

Internet

- Set Scroll Unit/Speed
- Set Whether to Show Images or Play Melodies

(▶ P. 14-25)

Yahoo! Keitai

- Set Font Size
- Set Flash® Sound On/Off

(▶ P. 14-26)

PC Site Browser

- Set Page Layout

(▶ P. 14-26)



Using Bookmarks

Save URLs to Bookmark for quick access.

Saving URLs to Bookmark

- 1 [Web Page] → → **Bookmark** → → **Add Bookmark** → → **YES** →

- 2 Select a folder →

Accessing Pages from Bookmark

- 1 Press and hold → **Bookmark** →



Bookmark Folder List Window

From PC Site Browser

Press and hold → **PC Site Browser** → → **Bookmark** →

- 2 Select a folder →



Bookmark List Window

- 3 Select a bookmark →

Tip

- To access a bookmarked page from another page:
 → **Bookmark** → → **Bookmark List** → → Select a folder → → Select a bookmark →

Using Saved Pages

Save an open page to Saved Pages to view the page at a later time without connecting to the Internet.

- Only Yahoo! Keitai pages can be saved.
- Viewable content is page as it was saved.

Saving a Page

- 1 [Web Page] → → **Saved Pages** → → **Add Saved Pages** → → **YES** →

Opening Saved Pages

- 1 Press and hold → **Saved Pages** →



Saved Pages List Window



2 Select a page →

Tip

- To open a saved page from another page:

⇔ *Saved Pages* ⇔ ⇔ *Saved Pages List* ⇔ ⇔ Select a page ⇔



More Features

Advanced

Bookmarks

- Edit a Title
- Edit a URL
- Send a Bookmark by Mail
- Check Number of Bookmarks
- Create a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder
- Delete a Folder
- Delete Bookmarks

(▶ P. 6-17)

Saved Pages

- Edit a Title
- Protect Saved Pages
- Check Number of Saved Pages
- Delete Saved Pages

(▶ P. 6-18)



Connecting to the Internet

Start Here

[Web Page] P. 6-3, P. 6-5

[History List] P. 6-3, P. 6-6

[Enter URL] window P. 6-3, P. 6-6

Yahoo! Keitai

Switch to PC Site Browser

[Web Page] → → **Switch to PC**
→ → **YES** → (→ **YES** or **NO**
→)

Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Web Page] → → **Yahoo!**
Keitai →

PC Site Browser

Switch Page Layout Types

[Web Page] → → **Change Disp. Mode** →

The page layout toggles between PC screen and Small screen.

Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Web Page] → → **Home** →

History

Save a URL in History to Bookmark

[History List] → Select a record →
 → **Add Bookmark** → → **YES**
→ → Select a folder →

Check a URL in History

[History List] → Select a record →
 → **URL** →

Delete Records in History

[History List] → Select a record →
 → **Delete** →

- To Select **Delete This**
→ **Delete This** → → **YES** →
- To Select **Delete Selected**
→ **Delete Selected** → → Select
records → → → **YES** →
- To Select **Delete All**
→ **Delete All** → → Enter Security
Code → → **YES** →

Entering URLs

Access a Page from an Entered URL Record

[Enter URL] window → Select a
record → → **OK** →



Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record

[Enter URL] window → Select a record → → Select URL entry field → → Edit URL → → OK →

Send an Entered URL Record by Mail

[Enter URL] window → Select a record → → **Compose Message** → → Enter address, subject and text →

Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

Delete Entered URL Records

[Enter URL] window → Select a record → → **Delete** →

- To Select *Delete This* → *Delete This* → → YES →
- To Select *Delete Selected* → *Delete Selected* → → Select records → → → YES →
- To Select *Delete All* → *Delete All* → → Enter Security Code → → YES →

Root Certificates

Check Certificate Details

→ **Settings** → → **Connection Settings** → → **Certificate** → → Select a certificate →

Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

→ **Settings** → → **Connection Settings** → → **Certificate** → → Select a certificate → → **Valid/Invalid** →

This procedure switches a valid certificate to invalid and an invalid one to valid.

Page Operations

Start Here

[Web Page] P. 6-3, P. 6-5

Reload Page

[Web Page] → → **Reload** →



Save Images/Melodies in a Page

[Web Page] → → **Save File** → → (Select a file) → → **Save** → → **YES** → (→ **YES** or **NO** →)

To play a melody, select **Play** and press .

To check file properties, select **Property** and press .

Save Background Image of a Page

[Web Page] → → **Save File** → (→ **Background Image** →) → **Save** → → **YES** → (→ **YES** or **NO** →)

To check file properties, select **Property** and press .

Send URL of a Page by Mail

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** → → **Compose Message** → → **Attach URL** →

Enter address, subject and text →

Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

Call a Phone Number in a Page

[Web Page] → Select a phone number → → **Voice Phone** or **TV Call** → → **Dial** →

Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page

[Web Page] → Select an e-mail address → → **Compose S! Mail** →

Access Another Page from a URL in a Page

[Web Page] → Select a URL →

Save a Phone Number/E-mail Address in a Page to Phone Book

[Web Page] → Select a phone number/e-mail address → → **Add to Phone Book** → → **YES** → → **Phone** or **USIM** → → **New**, **Add** or **Overwrite** → → **Edit each item** → → (→ **Overwrite** or **Add** →) (→ **YES** or **NO** →) (→ Enter entry number →)

Search for Information by Keyword

[Web Page] → → **Quick Search** → → **Enter keyword** → → Enter keyword → or → → Select an item from search results →

To select a keyword from previous entries, select **History**, press , select a keyword, and then press .



Advanced Features

6

Internet

Change Font Size of a Page

[Web Page] → [P] → **Change Font Size** → [■] → Select a font size → [■]

Only available when the page layout type is *Small Screen* in PC Site Browser.

Zoom Page In/Out

[Web Page] → [P] → **Zoom** → [■] → Select a magnification → [■]

Zoom is only available when PC Site Browser is set to *PC Screen*.

Jump to Top/End of a Page

[Web Page] → [P] → **Convenient Tools** → [■] → **Head of Sentence** or **End of Sentence** → [■]

Change Character Code of a Page

[Web Page] → [P] → **Convenient Tools** → [■] → **Change CHR Code** → [■] → Select a character code → [■]

Use this procedure when characters of a page are illegible.

Play Flash® from the Beginning

[Web Page] → [P] → **Convenient Tools** → [■] → **Replay** → [■]

Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page

[Web Page] → [P] → **Convenient Tools** → [■] → **Site Info** → [■] → **Title, URL** or **Certificate** → [■]

Show Key Guidance

[Web Page] → [P] → **Help** → [■]
 This procedure is only available when using PC Site Browser.



Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Start Here

[Bookmark Folder List] window P. 6-11
 [Bookmark List] window P. 6-11
 [Saved Pages List] window P. 6-11

Bookmarks

Edit a Title

[Bookmark List] window → Select a bookmark → → **Edit Title** → → Edit title →

Edit a URL

[Bookmark List] window → Select a bookmark → → **Edit URL** → → Edit URL →

Send a Bookmark by Mail

[Bookmark List] window → Select a bookmark → → **Compose Message** or **Attach to Mail** → → Enter address, subject and text →

Compose Message: Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted at the top of the text.
Attach to Mail: Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the bookmark file attached.

Check Number of Bookmarks

[Bookmark Folder List] window or [Bookmark List] window → → **No. of Bookmarks** →

The total number of bookmarks can be checked from Bookmark Folder List window; and the number of bookmarks in a folder can be checked from Bookmark List window.

Create a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] window → → **Add Folder** → → Enter folder name →

Edit a Folder Name

[Bookmark Folder List] window → Select a folder → → **Edit Folder Name** → → Edit folder name →

Change Order of Folders

[Bookmark Folder List] window → Select a folder → → **Sort Folder** → → Select a position →

The order of Preset folders cannot be changed.

Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder

[Bookmark List] window → Select a bookmark → → **Move** → → **Move This, Move Selected** or **Move All** → → Select a destination folder → (→ Select bookmarks → →) → **YES** →



Delete a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] window →
Select a folder → → **Delete Folder** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

This procedure also deletes all the bookmarks saved in the folder.

Delete Bookmarks

■ To Delete All Bookmarks

[Bookmark Folder List] window →
 → **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

■ To Delete Bookmarks in a Folder

[Bookmark List] window → Select a bookmark → → **Delete** →

- To Select *Delete This*
→ **Delete This** → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete Selected*
→ **Delete Selected** → → Select bookmarks → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete All*
→ **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Saved Pages

Edit a Title

[Saved Pages List] window →
Select a saved page → → **Edit Title** → → Edit title →

Protect Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] window →
Select a saved page → →
Protect ON/OFF →

Use this procedure to toggle saved pages between protected and unprotected.

Check Number of Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] window →
→ **No. of Pages** →

Delete Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] window →
Select a saved page → →
Delete →

- To Select *Delete This*
→ **Delete This** → → **YES** →
 - To Select *Delete Selected*
→ **Delete Selected** → → Select saved pages → → **YES** →
 - To Select *Delete All*
→ **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →
- Protected Saved Pages cannot be deleted.

Camera



Overview	7-2
Viewfinder Indicators	7-3
Capturing Still Images	7-5
Capturing Still Images.....	7-5
From Quick Menu	7-5
Recording Videos	7-7
Recording Videos	7-7
From Quick Menu	7-7
Chance Capture.....	7-8
Recording Only Sound	7-8
From Quick Menu	7-9
Various Camera Features	7-10
Continuous Shooting	7-10
Add Frames to Images	7-11
Auto Timer	7-11
Panoramic Shooting.....	7-11
Advanced Features	7-13
Shooting Still Images/Videos.....	7-13
Using Still Images/Videos.....	7-13
After Continuous Shooting	7-14
After Shooting Framed Images.....	7-15

7



Capture still images and record videos with handset camera.

Shoot Still Images/Videos

Wide Range of Image Sizes

Select image size accordingly. Use small sizes for S! Mail attachments and larger sizes for saving high resolution images (P. 7-13).

Photo Mode Selection

Select a mode suited to the subject/scene such as Portrait, Scenery, and Sports mode (P. 7-13).

Various Camera Features

Among features included are shooting with Auto Timer, continuous shooting and shooting framed images (P. 7-10, P. 7-11).

Chance Capture

Record videos even when recording time is over (P. 7-8). Recorded videos are saved only for the available recording time from the end of recording.

Send by S! Mail

Non-SoftBank
Mobile Phones

SoftBank
Handsets

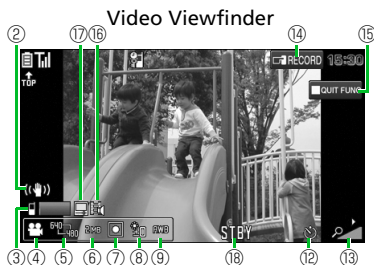
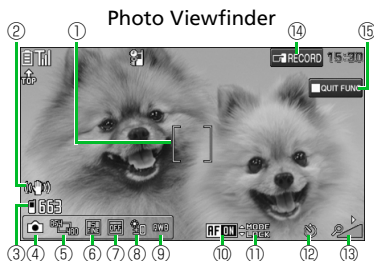
PCs

- Still images are saved in JPEG format and videos in MPEG4 format.
- Clean the lens with soft cloth. Fingerprints or grime on the lens may result in blurred images.
- Handset movement during shooting may cause image blurring when Shake Correction is **OFF**. Setting Shake Correction to **Auto** is recommended.
- Although Camera is made with high-precision technology, some pixels may appear brighter and some darker.
- Shooting or saving images when handset is warm may affect image quality.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight for an extended period may result in discoloration of photo images.
- Shutter click and Auto Timer tone sound at a fixed volume even in Manner Mode.



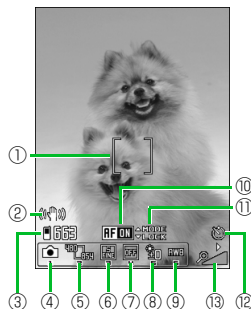
Viewfinder Indicators

● Handset Closed

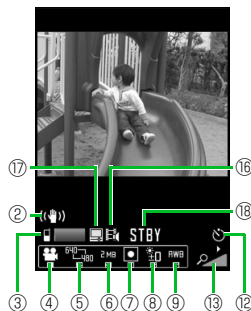


● Handset Open

Photo Viewfinder



Video Viewfinder



①	Focus Frame (Still Images) A white frame appears for Auto Focus. Focus Frame is green when focus is locked, and red if focusing failed.
②	Shake Correction Ⓢ Auto Shake Correction
③	Storage Location (Still Image) Handset Memory Card Number of Files That can be Saved (Still Image) White number: 11 or more Yellow number: 10 or less Red number: No memory space
	Storage Location (Video) Handset Memory Card Storage Capacity (Video) Blue: 500 KB or more Yellow: Less than 500 KB Red: No memory space
④	Camera Mode Movie Mode Chance Capture Photo Mode Auto Continuous Shooting Manual Continuous Shooting Voice Mode Panorama Cap. Mode



Overview

⑤	Image Size (Still Image/Video) - Photo Mode 3M (1536 × 2048) to - SubQCIF (128 × 96) - Continuous Shooting - Screen (240 × 427) to - SubQCIF (128 × 96) - Panorama Cap. Mode - Panorama (2592 × 480 : Fixed) - Movie Mode - VGA (640 × 480) to - SubQCIF (128 × 96) - Chance Capture - QVCA (320 × 240) to - SubQCIF (128 × 96)
⑥	Image Quality (Still Image) - Super Fine Normal - Fine
	File Size (Video) - Mail attachment² Long time - Up to 2 MB
⑦	Photo Mode - Auto Night Mode - Portrait Pet - Scenery Food - Backlight OFF - Sports Mode
⑧	Brightness +2 to -2

⑨	White Balance¹ - Auto Light bulb - Fine Fluorescent lamp - Cloudy
⑩	AF Status Display (Still Image) - AF ON AF ON - AF Close-up - AF OFF AF OFF
⑪	AF Guidance (Still Images) For AF toggle and focus lock
⑫	Auto Timer Auto Timer set
⑬	Zoom (16 steps) Minimum to Maximum
⑭	Side Key Guide Shutter
⑮	Touch Sensor Guide End Camera
⑯	Recording Type (Video) - Normal (Video & Sound) - Video only Sound only
⑰	Image Quality (Video) - Long time Fine - Normal Super Fine

⑱	Recording Status (Video) - STBY Recording ready - REC Recording
---	---

- 1 In Photo Mode or Continuous Shooting, only selectable when **OFF** is selected for **Photo Mode**.
- 2 Only available when **Select Size** is QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96).

Shake Correction

Handset is equipped with this function for preventing shake during still image or video shooting. Set this function off when not needed.



Capturing Still Images

Shoot still images with handset.

Capturing Still Images

- 1 → **Camera** → →

Photo Mode →

- 2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** →

The shutter clicks once focus locks and Focus Frame turns green.

- **To Discard the Shot Image and Return to Viewfinder**

→ → **YES** →



Photo Viewfinder

- 3



Photo Preview Window

Tip

- Attach still images to S! Mail or set as wallpaper. (P. 7-14)
- Still images are stored in My Picture under Data Folder. See P. 14-32 for details on changing the storage location to Memory Card.
- Shutter clicks even if focusing fails and Focus Frame turns red.

Available Functions

AF Toggle	
AF Lock	
Zoom (Telescopic)	
Zoom (Wide angle)	
Key Guidance	

From Quick Menu

- Use Quick Menu to activate Camera from closed position.

- 1

Touch Sensor is enabled (On).

- 2 Tap , or

- **Returning to Standby**

→ or Press and hold

- 3 or to select →

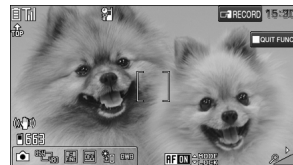


Photo Viewfinder (Landscape View)

- **Returning to Standby**

→

- 4 **Display subject to shoot** →

- 5

- **To Take Shot Again**

→ → **YES** →

7

Camera



Keys in Photo Viewfinder (Landscape View)

Zoom (Telescopic)	
Zoom (Wide angle)	
End Photo Mode	

After shooting, press and hold to end without saving the image.



More Features



Advanced

Shooting Still Images

- Switch Camera Modes
- Select Image Size
- Select Photo Mode
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Color Modes
- Check Storage Capacity
- Toggle Auto Focus
- Set Shake Correction

(▶ P. 7-13)

Using Still Images

- Upload Still Image/Video to Blog
- Send Still Image with Graphic Mail
- Attach Still Image to Mail and Send
- Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Show Shot Still Image in Standby

(▶ P. 7-13)



Customize

Camera Settings

- Set Image Quality
- Set White Balance
- Reduce Flicker

- Set Shutter Sound
- Set Display for Handset Closed Shooting (▶ P. 14-31)

File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Shot Still Images
- Save Shot Still Images Automatically (▶ P. 14-32)



Recording Videos

Record videos with or without sound, or record sound only.

- Videos are stored in Videos under Data Folder. See P. 14-32 for details on changing the storage location to Memory Card.

Recording Videos

- 1 → **Camera** → → **Movie Mode** →



Video Viewfinder

- 2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** →



Recording starts.

- 3



Video Preview Window

Recording ends.

- **To Play the Recording**

→ → YES →

- **To Discard the Recording and Return to Viewfinder**

→ CLEAR → YES →

- 4

Available Functions

Zoom (Telescopic)	
Zoom (Wide angle)	
Help	

Tip

- Key operation tones may be recorded if you adjust zoom, etc. while recording a video.

From Quick Menu

- Use Quick Menu to activate Video from closed position.

- 1

Touch Sensor is enabled (On).

- 2 Tap , or

- **Returning to Standby**

→ or Press and hold

- 3 or to select →



Video Viewfinder
(Landscape View)



■ Returning to Standby



4 Display subject to shoot →

Video shooting begins.

5

Video shooting ends.

6

■ Returning to Standby



7

Camera

Keys in Video Viewfinder (Landscape View)

Zoom(Telescopic)	
Zoom(Wideangle)	
End Video Mode	

After shooting, press and hold to end without saving the image.

Tip

- Sound from operating keys (e.g. adjusting zoom) during shooting may be recorded.

Chance Capture

Continue recording a video until you shoot the desired scene even when the available recording time is over.

1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] → → →



2 Frame image in Viewfinder →



Recording starts.

When the available recording time is over, the remaining time indication flashes.

3 (twice)

Note

- When recorded video exceeds available memory, handset saves the maximum recordable time from the end of recording. Initial portion is deleted.

Recording Only Sound

Record only audio in Movie Mode. (Voice Mode)

1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] → → →



2

Recording starts.

3 (twice)

Tip

- To activate Voice Mode from Main Menu:

→ Camera → → Voice Mode →



From Quick Menu

- Use Quick Menu to activate Voice Mode from closed position.

1

Touch Sensor is enabled (On).

2 Tap , or

■ **Returning to Standby**

⇒ or Press and hold

3 or to select ⇒



Sound Recording Window
(Landscape View)

■ **Returning to Standby**

⇒

4

Recording starts.

5

Recording ends.

6

More Features

Advanced

Shooting Videos

- Switch Camera Modes
- Select Image Size
- Select Photo Mode
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Color Modes
- Check Storage Capacity
- Change Video Type
- Set Shake Correction

▶ P. 7-13

Using Videos

- Upload Still Image/Video to Blog
- Send Recorded Video by Mail
- Show Recorded Video in Standby
- Edit Title of Video
- Playing Videos

▶ P. 7-13

Customize

Video Settings

- Set Image Quality
- Set File Size
- Set White Balance
- Reduce Flicker
- Set Shutter Sound
- Set Display for Handset Closed Shooting

▶ P. 14-31

File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Shot Videos
- Save Shot Videos Automatically

▶ P. 14-32

7

Camera



Continuous Shooting

Shoot up to 20 still images continuously.

Automatic continuous shooting mode:
Automatically shoots a set number of images at set intervals after you release the shutter.

Manual continuous shooting mode:
Shoots a set number of images, each of which is shot by releasing the shutter manually.

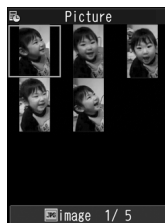
- See P. 14-31 for details on setting interval/number of shots for Continuous Shooting.

1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] → → or



Continuous Shooting Viewfinder (Manual)

2 Frame image in Viewfinder →



Thumbnail Preview Window

■ To Stop Continuous Shooting

In Automatic Mode:

→ → **NO** →

In Manual Mode:

→

■ To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder

→ → **YES** →

3 Press and hold → **Save** or **Mirror Save** →

Tip

- Image size can only be set to *Screen*, *QVGA V.*, *QCIF*, or *SubQCIF*.



Add Frames to Images

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Select Frame** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a frame** ⇒

- 2 Compose image in the frame ⇒



Framed Image Preview Window

- 3

Auto Timer

- Auto Timer returns to OFF after shooting.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Auto Timer** ⇒

- 2 **ON** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter time** ⇒

- 3 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇒

Auto Timer starts countdown, and Camera Indicator flashes red. About five seconds before shooting, a countdown tone starts playing and Camera Indicator flashes rapidly.

■ To Stop Auto Timer

⇒ or **CLEAR**

- 4

Tip

- To shoot manually during Auto Timer countdown, press .

Panoramic Shooting

Create a single panorama shot automatically by moving handset horizontally while shooting.

- Letting handset move up or down during shooting may produce a shot with a reduced height or blurring.
- A moving subject may be difficult to shoot.
- Shooting may fail with a subject having a simple pattern or no pattern.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒



Panorama Cap. Window



Various Camera Features

2 Display one end of subject



Panorama shooting starts.



Panorama Shooting

Pan left or right as horizontally as possible so the subject does not deviate up or down from the displayed green line. Keep a good panning speed so that **GOOD** appears. If the speed is too fast, **FAST** appears and the scene cannot be captured properly.

3



Panorama shooting ends. Shooting ends automatically if shooting reaches the maximum storable capacity.

■ To Take Shot Again



4



More Features

Advanced

After Continuous Shooting

- View Images
- Save One Frame
- Save Only Selected Images
- Save as Animation
- Open an Image as Mirror Image
- Attach to Mail

(▶ P. 7-14)

After Shooting Framed Images

- Change Frame before Saving Image

(▶ P. 7-15)

Customize

Camera Settings

- Set Interval for Continuous Shooting

(▶ P. 14-31)



Shooting Still Images/Videos

Start Here

[Photo Viewfinder] P. 7-5

[Video Viewfinder] P. 7-7

Switch Camera Modes

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ Select a Camera Mode ⇒

Select Image Size

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ Select an image size ⇒

Select Photo Mode

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ Select a Photo Mode ⇒

Adjust Brightness

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ Select a brightness level ⇒

Switch Color Modes

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Camera Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Effect** ⇒ ⇒ **Full Color, Sepia or Monochrome** ⇒

Check Storage Capacity

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Memory Info** ⇒

Toggle Auto Focus

[Photo Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **AFchange** ⇒ ⇒ **ON, Close-up or OFF** ⇒

Change Video Type

[Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Movie Type Set** ⇒ ⇒ **Normal, Video or Voice** ⇒

Set Shake Correction

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Shake Correction** ⇒ ⇒ **Auto or OFF** ⇒

Using Still Images/Videos

Start Here

[Photo Preview] window P. 7-5

[Video Preview] window P. 7-7

Upload Still Image/Video to Blog

[Photo Preview] window/ [Video Preview] window ⇒ ⇒ **Blog Cont.** ⇒ (⇒ **Attach Mail, QVGA Scale Down or VGA Scale Down** ⇒ ⇒ Create and send S! Mail

Specify a blog upload destination beforehand with Blog/Mail Member (P. 5-4).



Advanced Features

Send Still Image with Graphic Mail

[Photo Preview] window → [Envelope icon] → **Insert Image** → [Image icon] (→ **Insert Mail** or **SubQCIF Scale Down** → [Image icon]) → Create and send Graphic Mail

Attach Still Image to Mail and Send

[Photo Preview] window → [Envelope icon] → **Attach Image** → [Image icon] → (**Attach Mail, QVGA Scale Down** or **VGA Scale Down**) → [Image icon] → Compose and send S! Mail

Send Recorded Video by Mail

[Video Preview] window → [Envelope icon] → Compose and send S! Mail

Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview] window → [Mirror icon] → **Mirror Display** → [Image icon]

Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview] window → [Mirror icon] → **Mirror Save** → [Image icon]

Show Shot Still Image in Standby

[Photo Preview] window → [Standby icon] → **Set as Display** → [Image icon] → **Stand-by Display** → [Image icon] → Select a layout → [Image icon] → Check preview → [Image icon]

Show Recorded Video in Standby

[Video Preview] window → [Standby icon] → **Set as Stand-by** → [Image icon]

Edit Title of Video

[Video Preview] window → [Edit icon] → **Edit Title** → [Image icon] → Edit title → [Image icon]

Play Video

[Menu icon] → **Camera** → [Image icon] → **Videos** → [Image icon] → Select folder → [Image icon] → Select data → [Image icon]

See P. 9-5 for details on the Playback window for videos.

After Continuous Shooting

Start Here

[Thumbnail Preview] window P. 7-10

View Images

[Thumbnail Preview] window → Select an image → [Image icon]

Press [Left/Right arrow] to switch to the previous/next image.

Save One Frame

[Thumbnail Preview] window → Select image → [Image icon] → [Image icon]



Advanced Features

Save Only Selected Images

[Thumbnail Preview] window →
Select an image →  → Repeat
the same step →  → **Save** or
Mirror Save → 

 Select a checked image and press  to cancel the selection.

Save as Animation

[Thumbnail Preview] window →
 → **Store All&Anime** →  →
Save or **Mirror Save** →  →
Select a destination → 

Open an Image as Mirror Image

[Thumbnail Preview] window →
 → **Mirror Display** or **Normal Display** → 

Attach to Mail

[Thumbnail Preview] window →
Select an image →  (twice) →
Attach Image →  (→ **Attach Mail/QVGA Scale Down** → ) →
Compose and send S! Mail

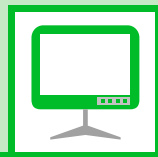
After Shooting Framed Images

Start Here

[Framed Image Preview] Window
..... P. 7-11

Change Frame before Saving Image

[Photo Preview] window →  →
Change Frame →  → Select a
frame → 



About TV	8-2	Advanced Features.....	8-14
TV Antenna	8-3	Channel Settings.....	8-14
TV Windows	8-4	Watching TV	8-14
Initial Setup.....	8-5	Data Broadcasts	8-15
Watching TV	8-6	TV Link.....	8-15
Time Shift Playback While		Recording Programs	8-16
Watching	8-7	Playing Programs	8-16
From Quick Menu	8-7	View/Record Timer	8-17
Data Broadcasts (Japanese)	8-8		
Program Guide	8-9		
Recording/Playing Programs	8-10		
Recording Programs.....	8-10		
Playing Programs	8-10		
View/Record Timer.....	8-12		
Setting View Timer	8-12		
Setting Record Timer	8-12		



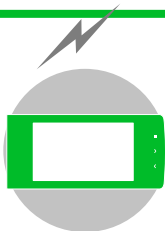
About TV

Handset supports One Seg Digital TV for cellular phones and other information terminals.

- One Seg is available only in Japan. Because other countries use different broadcast systems and frequencies, watching One Seg Digital TV is not possible outside of Japan.

One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices. It uses one segment of the terrestrial digital band for TV and data broadcasts that you enjoy at home, on your handset.



Watch TV in Widescreen

Data Broadcasts

Enjoy data broadcasts while watching TV. Access program-related information and even participate in the program (P. 8-8).

Record Programs

Record a program on memory card while viewing it and enjoy it again at a later time (P. 8-10).

View and Record Timer

Book programs you want to view/record. Program Guide can be used for booking programs (P. 8-12).

Quick Info

Sender and subject information appears for new message while TV is active (P. 14-6).

Precautions

- Never watch TV while riding a bicycle, motorcycle, or driving a car. You may not hear the sounds around you clearly, or TV image/sound may distract you creating the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you. Be especially careful at railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- TV image/sound may be affected if a call or message is received while watching TV.
- TV information (TV links or data you entered in Data Broadcast Mode) saved on handset cannot be transferred to another handset when you change your handset to another model or when it is repaired. Keep a memo of necessary information.
- TV is available when USIM Card is inserted and with a valid SoftBank contract.
- Handset has a built-in TV Antenna. Change the orientation of handset, keep it away from/close to your body or move to a different place to improve signal reception. Keep handset open while watching TV.
- Sufficiently extend TV Antenna to improve signal reception. An inadequate picture may be improved by changing antenna direction, moving handset away from/closer to you, or changing locations.



- TV image/sound may deteriorate or signal reception may become impossible in the following areas:
 - Areas far from signal towers
 - Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
 - In tunnels, underground malls or buildings with a lot of signal obstructions
- For more information on One Seg services, visit the following website:
 The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
 From PC: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/>
 From handset: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>
 (Japanese)

When You First Activate TV

A confirmation about operations in Landscape view (widescreen mode) appears.

Read information then press ☐, select **YES**, and press ☐. If **NO** is selected, information no longer appears when activating TV.

When a Call Arrives While Using TV

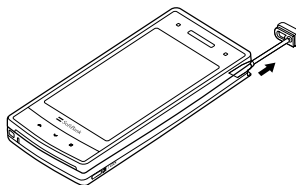
When a call arrives or when the Alarm or Schedule Alarm is activated while using TV, TV is interrupted to receive the call, etc. TV resumes after the interrupting function ends.

TV Antenna

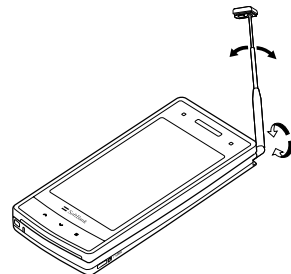
- Do not use force when changing antenna direction.

Extend

① Extend until Antenna stops

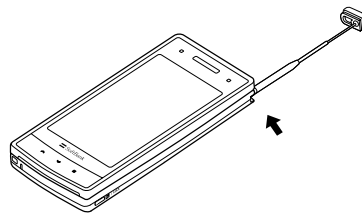


② Change direction of Antenna



Retract

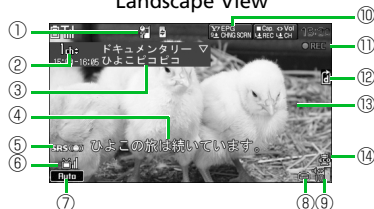
① Hold lower part of Antenna and push in all the way





TV Windows

Landscape View



Portrait View



①	Quick Info Information about messages received while watching TV appears in tickers (P. 14-6).
②	Channel (Remote Control No.)
③	Program Title
④	Subtitles
⑤	Appears while Sound Effect is ON (no setting required)
⑥	Signal Strength Strong Moderate Weak Out of Broadcasting Area
⑦	TV Effect OFF Sound Effects OFF CS5.1ch CS5.1ch Auto Auto Live Concert Drama Sports News Variety Movie Suitable for Each Genre Manner Manner Mode
⑧	Receiving Subtitle Information Subtitles Available
⑨	Volume
⑩	Guidance Display When opened: Guide for 9 (press and hold) When closed: Program guide and Touch Sensor guide
⑪	Recording Status Recording Timer Recording Activated Recording Paused Time Shift Status (Green) Pause Normal Speed 1.3x Speed 2x Speed
⑫	Supplementary Information May appear if data broadcast is updated while in Landscape view.
⑬	Image
⑭	TV Power Saving TV Power Saving Active
⑮	Data Broadcast
⑯	TV View Mode Image Mode Data Broadcast Mode



Initial Setup

Configure channel settings for your area and save stations to a channel list.

1 ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **Channel Settings** ⇒

2 **Select Area** ⇒ ⇒ **Select area** ⇒ ⇒ **Select prefecture/city** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Stations for the area are saved to a channel list.

Tip

- If signals from stations of the selected area are difficult to receive, search for stations using the **Automatic** option.

More Features

Advanced

Channel Settings

- Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically
- Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List
- Switch Channel Lists

(▶ P. 8-14)

Customize

Channel List

- Change Title of Channel List
- Delete a Channel List
- Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers
- Delete a Channel

(▶ P. 14-27)

Other Settings

- Reset Channel Settings

(▶ P. 14-30)



Watching TV

- 1 → **TV** → → **Watch TV**
→



TV Window

2 Use Keypad to select a channel

Press for channel 10, for channel 11, and for channel 12.

■ To Change Next/Previous Channel



■ To Automatically Search for Receivable Stations

→ Press and hold

Press or to stop station search.

- 3 to end TV → **YES** →

- Follow the same step to end TV in Portrait view.
- Alternatively, press and hold to end TV.

Tip

- TV volume is "0" when Manner Mode is active and no earphone is connected. Adjust with .
- Play TV audio from any Bluetooth compatible audio device (P. 13-5).

Available Functions

Pause or Continue ¹	
Adjust Volume	
Mute	
Toggle Portrait and Landscape	Press and hold
Toggle Windows ²	Press and hold Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast

- TV viewing will resume in Time Shift playback.
- Available in Portrait view.



Time Shift Playback While Watching

Resume watching TV even after pausing with playback.

- Time Shift playback is available when you have stopped watching One Seg or you receive a call.
- Time Shift playback is unavailable when *Time Shift Setup* is set to *Auto OFF*.

1 [TV] window ⇨

TV is paused.

2 When it is possible to resume watching TV ⇨

Time Shift playback starts.

■ To Start From Beginning of Stored Playback Data



■ To Change Playback Speed



■ To End Playback



Note

- Up to two minutes of playback data can be stored. Data is overwritten starting from the oldest data. If you resume viewing after pausing for more than two minutes, viewing starts from the beginning of stored data (not from where you paused).

Tip

- Other channels are unavailable while TV viewing is paused or during Time Shift playback.

From Quick Menu

- Use Quick Menu to activate TV from closed position.

1

Touch Sensor is enabled (On).

2 Tap , or

■ Returning to Standby

⇨ or Press and hold

3 or to select ⇨



TV Window (Landscape View)

■ Returning to Standby

⇨ Press and hold ⇨ YES ⇨



Keys in TV Window (Landscape View)

Still image recording	
Starts/Ends Video recording	Press and hold
Adjust Volume	or (Lower volume or raise volume)
Forward channel selection	Press and hold or Press and hold
Returning to Standby	Press and hold

Data Broadcasts (Japanese)

Data broadcasts are available while watching TV in Portrait view. Access various kinds of program-related and other information in Data Broadcast Mode.

1 [TV] window →



Data Broadcast Mode Window

Data Broadcast Mode is activated. Access the Internet from a link to view pages relating to the current program.

■Returning to Image Mode



Available Functions

Select a Link	
Confirm Selection of a Link	
Switch Pages	
Previous Page	
Toggle Windows	Press and hold Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast

Note

- Viewing data broadcast information requires no fees. However, accessing Internet links will incur transmission fees.
- Data broadcasts are unavailable in Landscape view.



Program Guide

- Use Program Guide to set timer to record/activate programs.
- Activate TV from Program Guide.

1 **⇒ TV** **⇒ Program Guide**

See Program Guide help for further operations.

Before first using Program Guide, configure initial settings and agree to the terms of use. Follow the onscreen instructions.

More Features

Advanced

Watching TV

- Show Program Information
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Main & Sub Audio
- Switch Audio Channels
- Show Current Channel List Information
- Add Current Station to Channel List
- Select a Program

(▶ P. 8-14)

Data Broadcasts

- Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast
- Check Certificate for SSL Page
- Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

(▶ P. 8-15)

TV Link

- Save TV Links
- Access Pages/Information from TV Links
- Show Details of a TV Link
- Show Number of Saved TV Links
- Delete TV Links

(▶ P. 8-15)

Customize

Image & Sound

- Set Subtitle Display
- Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View
- Save Battery by Dimming Backlight
- Keep Backlight Lighted While Watching TV
- Set Time Backlight Stays Lit While Watching TV
- Set Sound Effects
- Set Visual Image Effects
- Set TV to Pause or Continue for Incoming Calls (Time Shift Playback)

(▶ P. 14-28)

Data Broadcasts

- Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts
- Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts
- Set Whether or Not to Show Confirmation Window Again

(▶ P. 14-29)



Recording Programs

TV programs can be recorded on memory card while you are watching them.

- Data broadcasts are not saved with recording.

1 [TV] window → Press and hold

Recording starts.

■ To Capture a Still Image



Captured still images are saved to TV folder in Data Folder.

2

Recording ends.

■ When Memory Becomes Full

Recording ends and the recorded portion is saved.

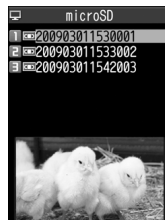
Note

- The channel remains fixed during recording.
- Recording certain programs is restricted. If a restriction is activated while recording a program, recording automatically ends, and the part that has been recorded so far is saved.
- When appears to indicate handset is out of the broadcasting area, recording is paused. When the signal strength recovers to weak or better, recording automatically resumes.
- Recordings that you make are for personal use only. Other uses require the permission of the copyright holder.

Playing Programs

1 → **Data Folder** → → **TV** →

2 **Video** → → **microSD** →



Recorded Program List Window

■ To View Captured Still Images

→ **Image** → → Select a folder →



Recording/Playing Programs

3 Select a file →



Recorded Program Playback Window

■ To Stop Playback



Tip

- If a program was stopped partway through, resume playback from that point. Select **YES** and press

Available Keys during Program Playback

Pause/Play	
Adjust Volume	
Mute	
Fast Play	
Frame Forward	during pause
Skip by 30 Seconds	Press and hold
Toggle Sound Effects	

More Features

Advanced

Recording Programs

- Edit Title of a Recorded Program
- Reset Title of a Recorded Program
- Switch Views of Recorded Program List Window
- Check Information on a Recorded Program
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Delete Recorded Programs

(▶ P. 8-16)

Playing Programs

- Specify Point to Start Playback

(▶ P. 8-16)

Customize

Recording Programs

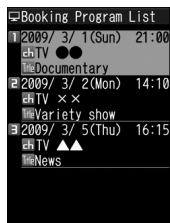
- Continue/End Recording at Low Battery

(▶ P. 14-29)



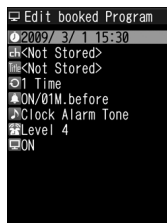
Setting View Timer

- 1 [MENU] ⇒ TV ⇒ [] ⇒ **Booking**
Program List ⇒ []



Booking Program List Window

- 2 [] ⇒ **New** ⇒ []



View Timer Setting Window

- 3 [] ⇒ [] ⇒ **Enter Date** ⇒ []
 ⇒ Enter date and time ⇒ []

■ To Select a Date from Calendar
 ⇒ Choose Date ⇒ [] ⇒ Select a date ⇒ [] ⇒ Enter time ⇒ []

- 4 [] ⇒ [] ⇒ **Select a channel**
 ⇒ []

- 5 [] ⇒ [] ⇒ **ON, ON/Set Time**
 or **OFF** ⇒ [] (⇒ Select a time ⇒ [])

- 6 []

Setting Record Timer

- 1 [MENU] ⇒ TV ⇒ [] ⇒ **Timer**
Recording List ⇒ []



Timer Recording List Window

- 2 [] ⇒ **New** ⇒ []



Record Timer Setting Window



- 3 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Date** ⇒
⇒ Enter date and time to start recording ⇒
- 4 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Date** ⇒
⇒ Enter date and time to end recording ⇒
■ To Select a Date from Calendar
⇒ **Choose Date** ⇒ ⇒ Select a date ⇒ ⇒ Enter time ⇒
- 5 ⇒ ⇒ **Select a channel** ⇒
- 6 ⇒ ⇒ **ON or OFF** ⇒
- 7 (⇒ **YES or YES (Confirm Once)** ⇒)

When the Set Time Comes

View Timer:

The alarm sounds for about five minutes, and the start date and time, channel, program title and animation appear in Display. Press any key to stop the alarm tone.

Record Timer:

One minute before the recording start time, the alarm sounds for about two seconds. After the start date and time, end date and time, channel, program title and animation appear in Display, TV activates. Then, recording starts at the set start time.

Note

- Set a timer start date and time that is more than one minute from the present time.

More Features

Advanced

View/Record Timer

- Select a Timer Alarm Tone
- Enter Title of Booked Program
- Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer
- Set Timer Alarm Volume
- Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window
- Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active
- Edit View/Record Timer Settings
- Change Order of Booked Programs
- Delete Booked Programs
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Check Result of Timer Recording

► P. 8-17)



Channel Settings

Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically

[MENU] ⇒ TV ⇒ [] ⇒ **Channel Settings** ⇒ [] ⇒ **Automatic** ⇒ [] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [] ⇒ Enter title ⇒ []

Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List

[MENU] ⇒ TV ⇒ [] ⇒ **Channel List** ⇒ [] ⇒ **Not Stored** ⇒ [] ⇒ **Channel Settings** ⇒ [] ⇒ **Select Area** ⇒ [] ⇒ Select area ⇒ [] ⇒ Select prefecture/city ⇒ [] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ []

Switch Channel Lists

[MENU] ⇒ TV ⇒ [] ⇒ **Channel List** ⇒ [] ⇒ Select a channel list ⇒ []

Watching TV

Start Here

[TV] window P. 8-6

Show Program Information

[TV] window ⇒ [] ⇒ **Program Info** ⇒ []

Adjust Brightness

[TV] window ⇒ [] ⇒ **Display Setting** ⇒ [] ⇒ **Brightness** ⇒ [] ⇒ Select a level ⇒ []

Switch Main & Sub Audio

[TV] window ⇒ [] ⇒ **Sound** ⇒ [] ⇒ **Main/Sub Sound** ⇒ [] ⇒ Select an audio output option ⇒ []

Switch Audio Channels

[TV] window ⇒ [] ⇒ **Sound** ⇒ [] ⇒ **Sound Switch** ⇒ [] ⇒ Select an audio channel ⇒ []

👉 **Sound Switch** is available when there is more than one audio channel.

Show Current Channel List Information

[TV] window ⇒ [] ⇒ **Channel** ⇒ [] ⇒ **Channel Info** ⇒ []

Add Current Station to Channel List

[TV] window ⇒ [] ⇒ **Channel** ⇒ [] ⇒ **Add Channel** ⇒ [] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ []

👉 Use **Add Channel** when you find a new station by holding down [].



Advanced Features

Select a Program

[TV] window ⇒ ⇒ **Channel** ⇒ ⇒ **Tune Service** ⇒ ⇒ Select a service (program) ⇒

Tune Service is available when more than one service (program) is broadcast from the same station.

Data Broadcasts

Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] windowP. 8-8

Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window ⇒ ⇒ **Data Broadcast** ⇒ ⇒ **Re-read** ⇒

Check Certificate for SSL Page

[Data Broadcast Mode] window ⇒ ⇒ **Data Broadcast** ⇒ ⇒ **Show Certificate** ⇒

Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window ⇒ ⇒ **Data Broadcast** ⇒ ⇒ **Back to Data BC** ⇒

TV Link

Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] window... P. 8-8

Save TV Links

[Data Broadcast Mode] window ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒
 Some TV links may have expiration dates.

Access Pages/Information from TV Links

⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **TV Link** ⇒

Types of TV links are indicated by the following icons:

- Memo information
- Data broadcast site
- Internet content

Show Details of a TV Link

⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **TV Link** ⇒ ⇒ Select a TV link ⇒ ⇒ **Display Detail** ⇒

Show Number of Saved TV Links

⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **TV Link** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **No. of TV Link** ⇒



Delete TV Links

[MENU] → TV → [] → TV Link → [] → Select a TV link → [P]

- To Select *Delete This*
→ Delete This → [] → YES → []
- To Select *Delete Selected*
→ Delete Selected → [] → Select a TV link → [] → Repeat step of selecting TV link → [] → []
- To Select *Delete All*
→ Delete All → [] → Enter Security Code → [] → YES → []

Reset Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] window
→ Select a program → [P] → Initialize Title → [] → YES → []

Switch Views of Recorded Program List Window

[Recorded Program List] window
→ [P] → Switch List → [] → Title or Title + Image → []

Check Information on a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] window
→ Select a program → [P] → Show Info → []

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] window
→ [P] → Check Memory → []

Delete Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] window
→ Select a program → [P]

- To Select *Delete This*
→ Delete This → [] → YES → []
- To Select *Delete Selected*
→ Delete Selected → [] → Select a file → [] → [P] → Delete → [] → YES → []
- To Select *Delete All*
→ Delete All → [] → Enter Security Code → [] → YES → []

Playing Programs

Start Here

[Recorded Program Playback] window P. 8-11

Specify Point to Start Playback

[Recorded Program Playback] window → [] → [P] → Location → [] → [] to specify point → []

Recording Programs

Start Here

[Recorded Program List] window.. P. 8-10

Edit Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] window
→ Select a program → [P] → Edit Title → [] → Edit title → []



View/Record Timer

Start Here

[Booking Program List] window P. 8-12
 [View Timer Setting] window . P. 8-12
 [Timer Recording List] window .. P. 8-12
 [Record Timer Setting] window . P. 8-12

Select a Timer Alarm Tone

[View Timer Setting] window →
 → → Select a folder →
 (→ Select a sub folder →) →
 Select an alarm tone →

Enter Title of Booked Program

[View Timer Setting] window or
 [Record Timer Setting] window →
 → → Enter program title →

Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer

[View Timer Setting] window or
 [Record Timer Setting] window →
 → → **1 Time, Daily or Select Day** →

When **Select Day** is specified, select days of the week and press .

Set Timer Alarm Volume

[View Timer Setting] window or
 [Record Timer Setting] window →
 → → to adjust volume →

Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window

[View Timer Setting] window →
 → → **ON or OFF** →

When **ON** is set, press twice and select **YES** from Alarm Notification window to activate TV and watch the booked program.

Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active

[Record Timer Setting] window →
 → → **Recording or Operation Preferred** →

When **Recording** is set, the function in operation is interrupted/ended, and recording starts. When **Operation Preferred** is set, a confirmation asking whether to start recording appears.

Edit View/Record Timer Settings

[Booking Program List] window or
 [Timer Recording List] window →
 Select a booked program → →
 Edit each item →

Change Order of Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] window or
 [Timer Recording List] window →
 → **Sort** → → Select a criterion →



Delete Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] window or
[Timer Recording List] window →
Select a program → → **Delete** →



- To Select *Delete This*
→ *Delete This* → → **YES** →
 - To Select *Delete selected*
→ *Delete selected* → → Select
programs → → → **YES** →
 - To Select *Delete All*
→ *Delete All* → → Enter
Security Code → → **YES** →
- Select *Delete past* to delete old bookings.

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

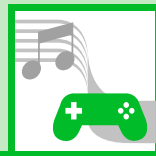
[Timer Recording List] window →
 → **Memory Info** →

Check Result of Timer Recording

→ **TV** → → **Result Timer Rec**
→ → Select an entry →

Press to play the recorded program.

Music Player & S! Appli



About Music Player	9-2
Playback Windows	9-3
Downloading Music	9-4
Music Playback	9-5
Playing Music.....	9-5
From Quick Menu	9-6
Using Playlists	9-6
S! Appli.....	9-8
About S! Appli.....	9-8
Downloading S! Appli	9-8
Activating S! Appli.....	9-9
Advanced Features.....	9-10
Music Player.....	9-10
S! Appli	9-13

9

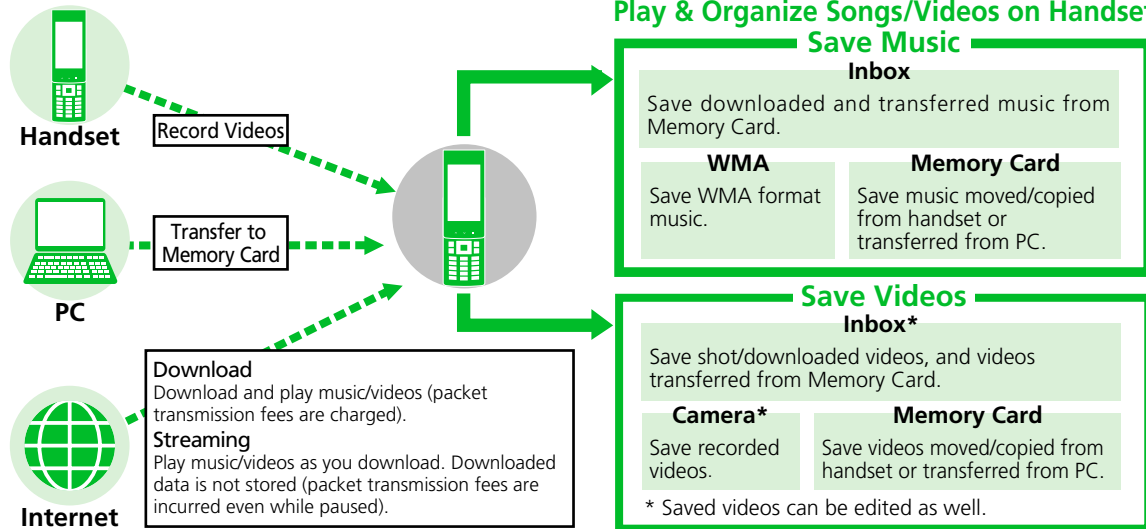


About Music Player

Use Music Player to play and organize songs on handset.

- Access the Internet to download music.
- Videos can also be played with Music Player.
- Some files are unplayable depending on their format.

- Play not possible with insufficient battery charge.
- Alarm notification, received calls, etc. while playing will pause play.



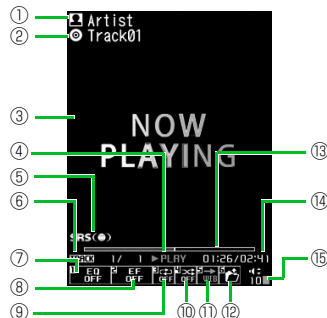
Tip

- Be sure to save music files from PC to Memory Card in the following folder.
¥PRIVATE¥MYFOLDER¥My Items¥Music



Playback Windows

Normal Screen Mode



Full Screen Mode
(For Video Playback)



①	Artist Name <Creator> ¹
②	Title
③	Playback Image <Video> ¹
④	Playback Status ▶PLAY Play ⏸PAUSE Pause ⏭FF Fast Forward ⏮REW Rewind ⏭SLOW Slow Play ⏭PLAY Fast Play
⑤	Sound Effect is on (appears continuously)
⑥	Current Track/Total Tracks in Folder (Current File Number/Total Files in Folder)
⑦	Equalizer EQ OFF OFF Pop Live Vocal Break CLight Worship Ballad Rap Concert Rock Kiss Loud For each genre of music EQ User1 EQ User2 EQ User3 User settings
⑧	Sound Effect EF OFF Beat Wave Bassline Vocal TruMeds CS51ch LoRge Extreme Clearline Live!! For different song styles EF User1 EF User2 EF User3 User settings
⑨	Repeat Mode OFF Repeat All ⏮ Repeat One

⑩	Shuffle Mode ON OFF
⑪	To Web Connect to the URL in the song.
⑫	Song/file Selection
⑬	Playback Position □ indicates the current playback position. Use □ to move playback position during pause.
⑭	Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
⑮	Volume
⑯	Guide Display ² QUIT FUNC Press and hold □ to end Music Player STOP □ to pause PLAY □ to resume

- 1 Descriptions in < > apply to video playback.
- 2 Only appears when handset closed.



Using Music Player the First Time

When initially using this function after purchasing your handset, a confirmation window will ask if you want to normally play in full screen mode. Select *YES* or *NO* and press .

Downloading Music

- Check the fees, expiration date, etc. on the download site.

1  ⇒ **Music** ⇒  ⇒ **Download Music** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

 To Search for Songs to Download
⇒ **Search Music** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

2 Follow onscreen instructions

Transferring from PC

- Convert music CD data to WMA format and store to microSD card using Windows Media Player.

1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **External Connection** ⇒  ⇒ **USB Mode Setting** ⇒  ⇒ **MTP Mode** ⇒ 

2 Connect handset to your PC with a USB cable

Music can now be transferred by operation from your PC. See the Help for “Windows Media Player” for details.

3 Transfer WMA data from your PC to microSD card

4 Once transferred, remove USB cable from your PC and handset

Remove from PC according to method for the OS.

Note

- Not supported for Windows Media Player 10. Use Windows Media Player 11.

Tip

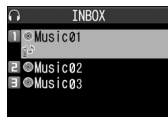
- After transferring WMA data, return *USB Mode Setting* to *Communication Mode*.



Playing Music

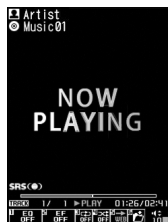
1 ⇒ **Music** ⇒

2 Select a folder ⇒



Song List Window

3 Select a song ⇒



Music Player Playback Window
(Video Player Playback Window)

Tip

- Use any Bluetooth® compatible audio device (P. 13-5).
- To play videos downloaded or recorded with camera:
 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Videos**
 ⇒ Specify a video to play

Available Keys during Playback

● While Handset is Open

Pause/Play	
Adjust Volume	
Play from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video	
Play Next Song/Video	
Rewind	Press and hold
Fast Forward	Press and hold
Move Playback Position	during pause

Select a Song/File	or
Set Equalizer	*
Set Sound Effect	*
Set Repeat Mode	*
Set Shuffle Mode	*
Access the Internet	
Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen	
Toggle Jacket Image	or When there are several jacket images.
End Playback	

* The setting toggles each time you press the key.



From Quick Menu

- Use Quick Menu to activate Music Player from closed position.

1

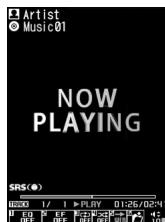
Touch Sensor is enabled (On).

2 Tap or or

■ Returning to Standby

⇒ or Press and hold

3 or to select ⇒



Music Player Playback Window

■ Returning to Standby

⇒ Press and hold

Available Keys in Playback Window

Play/Pause	
Adjust Volume	or
Next Track	Press and hold
Play from Start, Previous Track	Press and hold
End Music Player	Press and hold

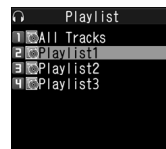
Using Playlists

Use playlists to play songs by genre or by artist, or gather your favorite songs and arrange them in your favorite order.

- Songs saved on memory card can also be added to playlists.

Creating a Playlist

1 ⇒ **Music** ⇒ ⇒ **Playlist** ⇒



Playlist List Window

2 ⇒ **Create Playlist** ⇒

3 Select a folder ⇒ ⇒

Select a song ⇒

Repeat this step to specify other songs.



4 When all songs are specified →

☑ → Enter playlist name → ☐

■ To Start Playing the Playlist

→ ☐

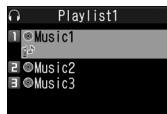
Playing a Playlist

1 [Playlist List] window →

Select a playlist → ☐

■ To Play a Playlist from the Beginning

→ Select a playlist → ☑



Playlist Song List Window

■ To Play All Songs

→ All Tracks → ☐ (twice)

2 Select a song → ☐

More Features

Advanced

Playing Music

- Resume Playback
- File Property
- Repeat
- Set Preferred Sound Quality
- Set Preferred Sound Effect
- Specify Play Start Position
- Use a Different Function While Playing Music
- Open Lyrics
- Open Jacket Image
- Check Operation Methods

(▶ P. 9-10)

Organizing Songs

- Set a Song as Ringtone
- Search for Songs
- Change Order of Songs
- Check Volume of Saved Music
- Delete All Music in WMA Folder

(▶ P. 9-11)

Playlists

- Add Songs to Playlist
- Change Order of Playlist Songs
- Cancel Playlist Songs

- Edit a Playlist Name
- Add All Music in Memory Card to Playlist
- Copy a Playlist
- Check Playlist Information
- Delete Playlists

(▶ P. 9-11)

Customize

Playback Window

- Change Playback Window Mode
- Change Design of Playback Window
- Set Image Display Size

(▶ P. 14-33)



About S! Appli

S! Appli are applications designed for SoftBank handsets. Download games and other applications.

● About Lifestyle-Appli

Handset includes Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible S! Appli "Lifestyle-Appli" (P. 11-3). Change Lifestyle-Appli settings as any other S! Appli.

● About Network S! Appli

Since network S! Appli require network (Internet) connection, transmission fees are incurred. A confirmation may appear when an application is connecting to the network. Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip

- For information on transmission fees, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).

● About License Information

To check Java™ and JBlend™ license information:

- 1 ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **Information** ⇒

Downloading S! Appli

- 1 ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Appli List** ⇒ ⇒ **Download S! App** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

- 2 **Select an S! Appli** ⇒ (twice)

- **To Activate S! Appli Right Away**
⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ Select an S! Appli
⇒

- **To Activate S! Appli Later**
⇒ **NO** ⇒

Note

- Check the battery level before downloading S! Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded S! Appli are no longer available.
- If you initialize handset when using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, the S! Appli will no longer be usable. You will need to download it again.
- When using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, using the procedures below will resave the S! Appli to your handset and the S! Appli in Memory Card will no longer be usable.
 - Download the same S! Appli with no Memory Card inserted
 - Download the same S! Appli with different Memory Card inserted
 Use an S! Appli resaved to handset as it is in handset, or again move it to Memory Card.

Tip

- For how to download Lifestyle-Appli, see P. 11-3.
- See S! Appli's Help menu or the download site for operational information.



Activating S! Appli

- 1 ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒
S! Appli List ⇒



S! Appli List Window

- 2 **Select an application** ⇒

- **To End S! Appli**
 ⇒ ⇒ **End** ⇒

Tip

- S! Appli is paused when a call arrives. S! Appli resumes when the call ends.

More Features

Advanced

S! Appli

- Check S! Appli Information
- Check Volume of Saved S! Appli
- Delete an S! Appli

(▶ P. 9-13)

Customize

When Running S! Appli

- Set Sound Volume
- Set Vibration
- Set Backlight
- Set Blinking of Backlight
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information
- Reset Security Settings of S! Appli

(▶ P. 14-33)

S! Appli Settings

- Reset S! Appli Settings
- Delete All S! Appli

(▶ P. 14-34)



Music Player

Start Here

[Music Player Playback] window	P. 9-5
[Song List] window	P. 9-5
[Playlist List] window	P. 9-6
[Playlist Song List] window	P. 9-7

Playing Music

Resume Playback

⇒ **Music** ⇒ ⇒ **Resume Play**

File Property

[Music Player Playback] window
⇒ ⇒ **Detail Info** ⇒ ⇒ **File Property** ⇒
 View file information.

Repeat

[Music Player Playback] window
⇒ ⇒ **Action Setting** ⇒ ⇒
Repeat Setting ⇒ ⇒ **All Repeat**
or **Single Repeat** ⇒

Set Preferred Sound Quality

[Music Player Playback] window
⇒ ⇒ **Action Setting** ⇒ ⇒
Sound Effect ⇒ ⇒ **Equalizer** ⇒
 ⇒ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇒
 ⇒ Set level for each
wavelength ⇒
● To return sound quality to initial state
⇒ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇒
 (twice)

Set Preferred Sound Effect

[Music Player Playback] window
⇒ ⇒ **Action Setting** ⇒ ⇒
Sound Effect ⇒ ⇒ **Effect** ⇒
⇒ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇒
⇒ Set level for each effect ⇒
● To set by existing effects
⇒ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇒ ⇒
 ⇒ Select effect ⇒
● To return sound effect to initial state
⇒ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇒
(twice)

Specify Play Start Position

[Music Player Playback] window
⇒ ⇒ **Play Menu** ⇒ ⇒ **Position to Play** ⇒ ⇒ Specify play start position with ⇒

Use a Different Function While Playing Music

[Music Player Playback] window
⇒ ⇒ **Switch to BGM** ⇒ ⇒
Activate another function



Open Lyrics

[Music Player Playback] window
 ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Detail Info** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **Lyric**
 ⇒ [■]
 Use [F] to toggle between lyrics.

Open Jacket Image

[Music Player Playback] window ⇒
 [P] ⇒ **Detail Info** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **Jacket Image** ⇒ [■]
 Use [F] to toggle jacket images.

Check Operation Methods

[Music Player Playback] window ⇒
 [P] ⇒ **Help** ⇒ [■]

Organizing Songs

Set a Song as Ringtone

[Song List] window ⇒ Select a song ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Select Ring Tone** ⇒ [■] (⇒ Specify play start position with [P] ⇒ [■]) ⇒ Select ringtone item ⇒ [■]

Search for Songs

[Song List] window, [Playlist List] window or [Playlist Song List] window ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Search** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **Title** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Select a search criterion ⇒ [■] ⇒ Enter condition ⇒ [■]
 Use [F] Select a song from search results and press [■] to play it.

Change Order of Songs

[Song List] window/ [Playlist Song List] window ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Sort** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Select a criterion ⇒ [■]

Check Volume of Saved Music

[Song List] window ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Memory Info** ⇒ [■]

Delete All Music in WMA Folder

[MENU] ⇒ Music ⇒ [■] ⇒ **WMA** ⇒ [■] ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Delete All** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [■]

Playlists

Add Songs to Playlist

[Playlist Song List] window ⇒ [P] ⇒ **Edit Playlist** ⇒ [■] ⇒ **Add Music** ⇒ [■] ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ [■] ⇒ Select songs ⇒ [■] ⇒ [■] ⇒ **YES** ⇒ [■]
 The songs you specified are added at the end of the playlist.



Change Order of Playlist Songs

[Playlist Song List] window →
Select a song → → **Edit Playlist**
→ → **Sort Playlist** → →
Select a position →

Cancel Playlist Songs

[Playlist Song List] window →
Select a song → → **Edit Playlist**
→ → **Release Settings** →
● To Select **Release This**
→ **Release This** → → YES →
● To Select **Release Selected**
→ **Release Selected** → → Select
songs → → → YES →
● To Select **Release All**
→ **Release All** → → Enter
Security Code → → YES →

Edit a Playlist Name

[Playlist List] window → Select a
playlist → → **Edit Playlist Name**
→ → Edit playlist name →

Add All Music in Memory Card to Playlist

[Playlist List] window → →
Update All Tracks → → YES →

Copy a Playlist

[Playlist List] window → Select a
playlist → → **Copy to Playlist** →

Check Playlist Information

[Playlist List] window → Select a
playlist → → **Playlist Info** →

Delete Playlists

[Playlist List] window → Select a
playlist → → **Delete Playlist** →

● To Select **Delete This**
→ **Delete This** → → YES →
● To Select **Delete Selected**
→ **Delete Selected** → → Select
playlists → → → YES →
● To Select **Delete All**
→ **Delete All** → → YES →



S! Appli

Start Here

[S! Appli List] window P. 9-9

Check S! Appli Information

[S! Appli List] window → Select an
S! Appli →  → **Properties** → 

Check Volume of Saved S! Appli

[S! Appli List] window →  →
Memory Info → 

Delete an S! Appli

[S! Appli List] window → Select an
S! Appli →  → **Delete** →  →
YES → 

Entertainment



Mobile Widget	10-2
Overview.....	10-2
Using Mobile Widget.....	10-2
Downloading Widgets.....	10-3
Adding Widgets	10-4
S! Quick News	10-5
Using S! Quick News	10-5
S! Info Channel	10-6
Using S! Info Channel	10-6
Books	10-8
Obtaining Books	10-8
Using BookSurfing®	10-8
Advanced Features	10-9
Mobile Widget	10-9
S! Quick News.....	10-9
S! Info Channel.....	10-10
Weather Indicators	10-10

10



Overview

Download widgets to access the latest information or use various tools. Access widgets from Standby by pressing .

- Add up to five widgets per Desktop page. Select from four Desktop pages.
- In addition to preinstalled widgets, download widgets as needed.
- Screenshots are for illustrative purposes and may differ in appearance from actual widgets.

Network Widgets

Some widgets require network connection. Transmission fees incur when using such widgets. Follow onscreen instructions when connecting.

- Packet transmission fees apply for downloading widgets.

Tip

- Contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information for details on transmission fees.

Checking Overview of Mobile Widget

- 1  **Entertainment**  
 **Mobile Widget**   
Information 

Using Mobile Widget

Open Desktop page and use widgets.

- 1 

Widgets appear.



Desktop

Note

- Handset may briefly connect to network after you press . Packet transmission fees apply.



2

Use pointer to select widgets.



Active Desktop Page

■ Alternatively, in Standby, press to open Active Desktop page.

3 Use to select widget →



Select Desktop Page

1 [Active Desktop Page] →

→ Select a Desktop page →



A "★" appears next to the selected Desktop page.

Downloading Widgets

Download and add to Desktop page.

● Store up to 100 widgets.

1 → **Entertainment** → → **Mobile Widget** → → **Widget Contents** → → **Download Widget** →

2 Select widgets to download → (twice)

3 **Paste on Desktop** → → Select a Desktop page → → Move into position →

■ To Activate Immediately

→ **Start** →

■ To Check Information

→ **Property** →

■ To Open List

→ **Widget Contents** →

■ To Return to Previous Window

→ **Back** →



Widget List Icons & Indicators



Widget List

①	Contents Icon
	Access Download Widget.
	Appears when no icon set to widgets.
	Uninstalled widgets. Select to start installation.
②	Data Information
	Preinstalled widgets
	Downloaded widgets
	Added to Desktop Page
	Sendable by mail
	Infrared transmittable
	Transferable to Memory Card

Adding Widgets

1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Widget** ⇒

2 Select widgets to add ⇒ ⇒ **Paste on Desktop** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a Desktop page** ⇒ ⇒ **Move into position** ⇒

Tip

- Add up to five widgets in each Desktop page.

More Features

Advanced

Mobile Widget

- Change Position of widgets
- Delete from Desktop Page
- Place widgets in Foreground or Background
- Update Display

▶ P. 10-9

Customize

Mobile Widget Settings

- Set Whether to Use Mobile Widget
- Check Auto Synchronize Settings
- Set Whether to Automatically Transmit When Abroad
- Delete All widgets from Desktop Page
- Set Whether to Use Cookies
- Delete Cookies

▶ P. 14-35



Using S! Quick News

Registered news can be updated automatically and checked from Standby.

Registering News

<Example> Register news on S! Quick News List

1 Press and hold



S! Quick News List Window

2 Add News



3 Select an item

Follow onscreen instructions.

Checking Updated Information

1 [S! Quick News List] window

Select an item

2 Select information

To Check Next Updated Information

More Features

Advanced

S! Quick News

- Manually Update List
- Automatically Update List
- View Descriptions of Registered News
- Delete Registered News/Items

(▶ P. 10-9)

Customize

S! Quick News

- Hide S! Quick News in Standby
- Set Ticker Speed
- Set Information to appear in S! Quick News
- Hide S! Quick News Images
- Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents

(▶ P. 14-36)



Using S! Info Channel

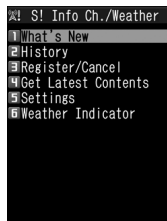
This information service automatically receives the latest news, weather, and other information.

- Transmission fees are incurred.

Subscribing for Service

Subscribe by registering to receive service.

- 1 ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Info Ch./Weather** ⇒



S! Info Channel Menu

- 2 **Register/Cancel** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

- 3 **Select a contents** ⇒

Continue by following onscreen directions to subscribe.

Checking Latest Information

A Desktop Icon notifies you when new information is received.

- 1 ⇒ **Desktop Icons** ⇒
- Continue by following onscreen directions. Web page operation is the same as for Yahoo! Keitai.

Tip

- To check from a menu:
[S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ **What's New** ⇒
- To check previous information:
[S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ **History** ⇒ ⇒ Select a date ⇒ ⇒ Unread or read backnumbers are indicated with or .

Weather Indicators

After subscribing, weather indicators showing current weather appear in Standby.

● Weather Indicators

	Clear (Daytime)		Later
	Clear (Night)		Partial
	Cloudy		Pollen (Low)
	Rain		Pollen (High)
	Thunder		UV Rays (Low)
	Snow		UV Rays (High)

<Example> Cloudy, partial rain



- Besides the above, indicators for chance of rain, typhoon information, seasonal information, etc. appear.



Checking Weather Report

- 1 [S! Info Channel Menu] →
Weather Indicator →  →
Weather → 

More Features

Advanced

S! Info Channel

- Receive Previous Unreceivable Information
- Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages
- Store Background Images from Web Pages
- Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

(▶ P. 10-10)

Weather Indicators

- Manually Update Weather Information
- (▶ P. 10-10)

Customize

S! Info Channel

- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information
- Set Font Size for Web Pages
- Set Font Size

(▶ P. 14-37)

Weather Indicators

- Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information
- Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby
- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information

(▶ P. 14-37)



Download e-comics, e-photo albums, and other CCF file books.

Obtaining Books

Download books from the Internet.

- Downloaded books are stored in Books in Data Folder.
- Some books require you to obtain a contents key (right to use contents).

1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Books** ⇒ ⇒ **Download Books** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Continue by following onscreen directions to download.

Tip

- Downloads from BookSurfing® are also available.

Using BookSurfing®

View e-comics, e-photo albums, etc. (CCF file).

1 ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒ ⇒ **BookSurfing** ⇒

BookSurfing® is activated.

See the Help for BookSurfing® for operation.

Tip

- Alternatively, activate BookSurfing® by selecting **BookSurfing** from the S! Appli list.



Mobile Widget

Start Here

[Active Desktop Page] P. 10-3

Change Position of widgets

[Active Desktop Page] → Point to target widgets → → **Change Layout** → → Move into position →

Delete from Desktop Page

[Active Desktop Page] → Point to target widgets → → **Delete Content** → → **YES** →

Place widgets in Foreground or Background

[Active Desktop Page] → Point to target widgets → → **To front or To back** →

Update Display

[Active Desktop Page] → Point to target widgets → → **Renew Display** →

S! Quick News

Start Here

[S! Quick News List] window... P. 10-5

Manually Update List

[S! Quick News List] window → Select an item → → **Refresh This or Refresh All** → → **YES** →

Automatically Update List

→ **Entertainment** → → **S! Quick News** → → **Settings** → → **Auto Refresh** → → Select an item → → Select an interval, **ON** or **OFF** → (twice)

View Descriptions of Registered News

[S! Quick News List] window → Select an item → → **Outline** →

Delete Registered News/Items

[S! Quick News List] window → Select an item →
 ● To Select **Delete This** → **Delete This** → → **YES** →
 ● To Select **Delete All** → **Delete All** → → **YES** → (twice) → Enter Security Code → (twice)



S! Info Channel

Start Here

[S! Info Channel Menu] window
..... P. 10-6

Receive Previous Unreceivable Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] window
⇒ **Get Latest Contents** ⇒ ☐ ⇒
YES ⇒ ☐

Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages

[Web Page] ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **Save File** ⇒
☐ ⇒ **Object** ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a file
⇒ ☐ ⇒ **Save** ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ☐
 Select **Play** and press ☐ to play melody file.
 Select **Property** and press ☐ to check file information.

Store Background Images from Web Pages

[Web Page] ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **Save File** ⇒
☐ ⇒ **Background Image** ⇒ ☐ ⇒
Save ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ☐
 Select **Property** and press ☐ to check file information.

Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

[Web Page] ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **Add to Phone Book** ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ☐ ⇒
Phone or **USIM** ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **New** or **Add** (overwrite) ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Edit items ⇒

Weather Indicators

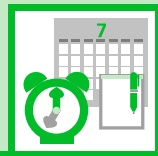
Start Here

[S! Info Channel Menu] window
..... P. 10-6

Manually Update Weather Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] window
⇒ **Weather Indicator** ⇒ ☐ ⇒
Manual Update ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ☐

Tools



Osaifu-Keitai®	11-2	Recording Your Voice.....	11-14
About Osaifu-Keitai®	11-2	Calculator	11-15
Using Osaifu-Keitai®	11-3	Alarm	11-16
Activating IC Card Lock.....	11-4	Setting Alarm.....	11-16
Life History Viewer	11-6	Canceling Alarm	11-17
Life History Viewer Window	11-6	Bar Code Reader	11-18
Viewing Data in Chronological Order ...	11-7	Scanning Bar Codes	11-18
Schedule	11-8	Checking Scanned Data.....	11-19
Schedule Window	11-8	Text Reader	11-20
Saving Events to Schedule	11-8	Scanning Text.....	11-21
Checking Saved Events	11-9	Checking Scanned Text	11-22
To Do List	11-11	Advanced Features	11-23
Saving Tasks.....	11-11	Osaifu-Keitai®	11-23
Checking Saved Tasks	11-12	Life History Viewer	11-23
Deleting Tasks	11-12	Schedule	11-24
Text Memo	11-13	To Do List	11-25
Saving Text Memos	11-13	Text Memo	11-25
Deleting Text Memos.....	11-13	Alarm.....	11-26
Voice Memo	11-14	Bar Code Reader & Text Reader	11-26
Recording the Other Party's Voice	11-14		



About Osaifu-Keitai®

"Osaifu-Keitai®" is a range of IC Card-based services used by Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handsets.

Make purchases using e-money or e-ticketing. Hold handset up to a reader/writer to pay for your purchase.

● Osaifu-Keitai® Terms

Osaifu-Keitai®	Cellular phone equipped with "FeliCa" contactless IC card technology for reading and writing data by holding phone up to a reader/writer.
IC Card	An IC chip embedded in Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible handsets.
Lifestyle-Appli	S! Applications to use Osaifu-Keitai®. Some applications are preinstalled.

Tip

- Data saved in IC Card varies by service content and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli. Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.
- Softbank is not liable for damage from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.
- IC Card data can be misused if your Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handset is lost or stolen. Softbank is not liable for any resulting damages.

Getting Started

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet website.

- Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Data Folder.



Registrations/Settings

Activate Lifestyle-Appli to complete registration or customize settings.

- Make deposit into account, check payment records or balance, etc.

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.



Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Osaifu-Keitai** ⇒ ⇒ **Lifestyle-Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **Download LifeApp** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

2 Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇒ (twice)

- To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Right Away
⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇒
- To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Later
⇒ **NO** ⇒

Note

- Check the battery level before downloading Lifestyle-Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded Lifestyle-Appli are no longer available.

Activating Lifestyle-Appli

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Osaifu-Keitai** ⇒ ⇒ **Lifestyle-Appli** ⇒



Lifestyle-Appli List Window

2 Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇒

- To End Lifestyle-Appli
⇒ ⇒ **End** ⇒

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

Tip

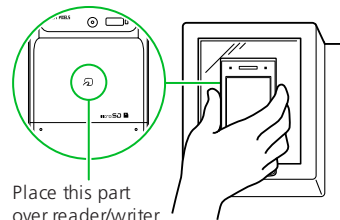
- Lifestyle-Appli is paused when a call arrives. Lifestyle-Appli resumes when the call ends.

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Reader/Writer Transactions

- There is no need to activate a Lifestyle-Appli during transaction.
- Make sure battery is adequately charged.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off or during calls or Internet transmissions.

1 Hold logo up to a reader/writer ⇒ Check scan result on reader/writer display



Place this part over reader/writer

- Hold handset parallel to the reader/writer. Try moving handset around if recognition is slow.

**Note**

- Softbank is not liable for damages from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.

Tip

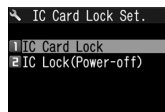
- Data may be unreadable if a metal object, etc. is between  logo and reader/writer.

Activating IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to and prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai®.

- 1  ⇒ **Tools** ⇒  ⇒ **Osaifu-Keitai** ⇒  ⇒ **IC Card Lock Set.** ⇒ 

- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ 



IC Card Lock Setting Window

- 3 **IC Card Lock** ⇒  ⇒ **ON** ⇒ 

-  appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, set IC Card Lock by:
Press and hold  in Standby.

- To Set Operation of IC Card Lock after Power Off

⇒ **IC Lock(Power-off)** ⇒  ⇒ **Maintain or IC Card Lock ON** ⇒ 

- To Cancel IC Card Lock

⇒ Press and hold  in Standby
⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ 

Remote Lock

Call from a specified phone to activate Call Remote Lock.

- Saving Numbers to Activate Call Remote Lock

- 1  ⇒ **Tools** ⇒  ⇒ **Osaifu-Keitai** ⇒  ⇒ **Call Remote Lock** ⇒ 

- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ 

- 3 **ON** ⇒ 



■ To Cancel Call Remote Lock

⇒ OFF ⇒



Call Remote Lock Setting Window

4 <Not Recorded> ⇒ ⇒

Enter Phone Numbers ⇒

■ To save numbers from Phone Book, Redial or Received calls

⇒ ⇒ Look-up Address ⇒

⇒ Phone Book, Redial or Received Calls ⇒ ⇒ Select a number ⇒

■ To save a Payphone number

⇒ ⇒ Payphone ⇒

5

● Activating Call Remote Lock

1 Using one of the specified phones, call handset

- Send Caller ID.

2 Hang up after handset receives the call

3 Within three minutes, repeat 1-2 twice

- After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces IC Card Lock activation.

Note

- If series is interrupted by another call, Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

More Features

Advanced

Osaifu-Keitai®

- Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties
- Check Memory Status
- Delete a Lifestyle-Appli
- Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers
- Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

(▶ P. 11-23)

Customize

Osaifu-Keitai®

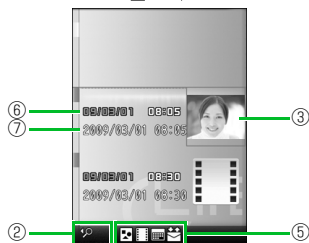
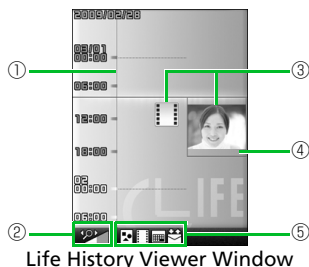
- Set illumination for IC Card
- Delete all Lifestyle-Appli
- Set Whether to Enable Opening from Browser

(▶ P. 14-41)



View activities in chronological order.

Life History Viewer Window



①	Time Axis
②	Scale of Time Axis
③	Icon Still image, image: Image thumbnail Movie: Movie icon Schedule: Schedule icon Mail message(send/receive)history: Mail message (send/receive)icon
④	Data properties Still image, image, Movie: No image Schedule: Schedule name Mail message (send/receive) history: The sender for the received mail, and the receiver for the sent mail
⑤	Data Type Still image, Image data Video Schedule Received Sent Received & sent messages

⑥	Date and time Still image, image, movie: Shooting, Updating or Saving date and time Schedule: Start date and time Mail message (send/receive) history: Received/Sent date and time
⑦	Title Still image, image, movie: Title Schedule: Schedule name Mail message (send/receive) history: The sender for the received mail, and the receiver for the sent mail



Viewing Data in Chronological Order

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Life History Viewer** ⇒



Life History Viewer Window

- To Reduce/Enlarge Scale of Time Axis

⇒ or

- 2 Select a data item ⇒



Life History Viewer Closeup Window

- 3 The function corresponding to the data type is activated and the data is opened.

More Features

Advanced

Life History Viewer

- Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer
- Update Life History Viewer

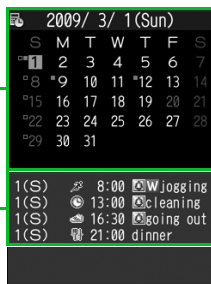
(▶ P. 11-23)



Schedule

Save future events to Schedule. Set the alarm to be activated at a specified time with message and animation appearing to remind you of the event. Saved events can be checked from Schedule window.

Schedule Window



Schedule Window

- ① Calendar
Blue date: Saturdays
Red date: Sundays, public and other holidays
__ : Today
☐ : Events for the morning
☒ : Events for the afternoon
- ② Information Panel
Date, day of the week, content type icon, time, and saved content
 - Content Type Icon
 - (or a user icon) Event
 - Holiday
 - Event Repetition Icon
 - Daily event
 - Weekly event
 - Monthly event
 - Annual event
 - Event for over a day

Saving Events to Schedule

①

②



Event Edit Window

③

④



Schedule

5 **1 Time, Daily** () **Weekly** () **Monthly** () or **Annually** ()

■ **To Specify Days of the Week**
Weekly () Put checkmarks to days of the week

6 **Select an alarm notification option**

■ **To Activate Alarm Prior to Event**
ON/Set Time Enter time

7 **Select an alarm tone type** (**Select a folder** **Select an alarm tone**)

Folders are unavailable when **Clock Alarm Tone** or **OFF** is selected.

8 **Enter place**

9 **Enter details**

Entered content appears when alarm sounds or vibrates.

● Alarm Notification Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display) for approximately five minutes.

When handset is closed, press to stop the alarm and read out the schedule subject.

When handset is opened, press any key to stop the alarm.

Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.

Adding Holidays

1 [Schedule] window **Holiday**

2 **Enter year, month and date**

3 **1 Time or Annually** ()

4 **Enter content**

5

Checking Saved Events

1 **Tools** **Schedule**

S	M	T	W	T	F	S
	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30	31			

1(S)	8:00	Jogging
1(S)	13:00	Cleaning
1(S)	16:30	Going out
1(S)	21:00	dinner

Schedule Window

■ **To Toggle between Weekly View and Monthly View**

2 to select a date with events

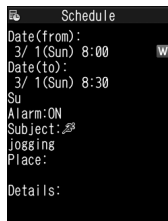
2009/3/1 (Sun)
13:00-14:00 Cleaning
16:30-18:00 Going out
21:00-23:00 dinner

Event List Window



Schedule

3 Select an event →



Event Details Window

Deleting Events

● To Delete One Event

1 [Event List] window → Select an event →

2 **Delete** → → **Delete This** → → **YES** →

● To Delete Multiple Events

1 [Event List] window →

2 **Delete** → → **Delete selected** →

3 Select an event →

Repeat this step to specify other events or vibrates.

4 → **YES** →

● To Delete All Events Prior to a Specified Date

1 In [Schedule] window, select date, [Event List] window or [Event Details] window →

2 **Delete** → → **Delete Past** → → Select an item → → **YES** →

More Features

Advanced

Schedule

- Sort Events by Icon
- Check Number of Saved Events
- Edit an Event
- Copy an Event
- Make/Cancel Secret Setting of an Event
- Delete All Events
- Reset Holidays
- Search Information by Keyword

(▶ P. 11-24)

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(▶ P. 14-3)



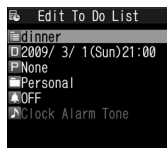
To Do List

Save tasks to To Do List. Set Alarm to remind you of deadlines.

Saving Tasks

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **To Do List** ⇒ ⇒

■ **To Edit a Saved Task**
⇒ Select a task ⇒



Task Edit Window

2 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter task** ⇒
Task appears when alarm time arrives.

3 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Date** ⇒
⇒ **Enter due date and time**
⇒

■ **To Enter Due Date from Calendar**
⇒ **Choose Date** ⇒ ⇒ Select a date on Calendar ⇒ ⇒ Enter date/time ⇒

■ **To Cancel a Due Date**
⇒ **No Date** ⇒

4 ⇒ ⇒ **Select a priority level** ⇒

5 ⇒ ⇒ **Select a category**
⇒

6 ⇒ ⇒ **Select an alarm notification option** ⇒

■ **To Activate Alarm Prior to Due Time**
⇒ **ON/Set Time** ⇒ ⇒ Enter time

7 ⇒ ⇒ **Select an alarm tone type** ⇒ (⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select an alarm tone** ⇒ ⇒)
Folders are unavailable when **Clock Alarm Tone** or **OFF** is selected.

● Alarm Notification Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display) for approximately five minutes.

When handset is closed, press to stop the alarm and read out the schedule subject.

When handset is opened, press any key to stop the alarm.

Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.



Checking Saved Tasks

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **To Do List** ⇒



Task List Window

- 2 Select a task ⇒



Task Details Window

Tip

- Overdue tasks are indicated by red status icons (e.g.).

Deleting Tasks

● To Delete One Task

- 1 [Task List] window ⇒ Select a task ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete This** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

● To Delete Multiple Tasks

- 1 [Task List] window ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete selected** ⇒
- 3 Select a task ⇒
Repeat this step to specify other tasks.
- 4 ⇒ **YES** ⇒

More Features

Advanced

To Do List

- Sort Tasks by Category
- Change Order of Tasks
- Set Task Status
- Delete All Tasks

(► P. 11-25)

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(► P. 14-3)



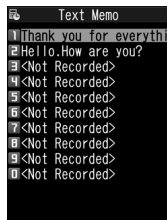
Text Memo

Save short notes or messages as text memos.

- Saved text memos can be inserted in Schedule or in messages.

Saving Text Memos

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Text Memo** →



Text Memo List Window

- 2 **<Not Recorded>** → → Enter content →

■ To Edit a Saved Text Memo

- Select a text memo → → Edit content →

Deleting Text Memos

● To Delete One Text Memo

- 1 [Text Memo List] window → Select a text memo →
- 2 **Delete** → → **Delete This** → → **YES** →

● To Delete Multiple Text Memos

- 1 [Text Memo List] window →
- 2 **Delete** → → **Delete selected** →
- 3 Select a text memo → Repeat this step to specify other text memos.
- 4 → **YES** →

More Features

Advanced

Text Memo

- Save a Text Memo to Schedule
- Sort Text Memos by Category
- Check Text Memo Information
- Delete All Text Memos

(▶ P. 11-25)



The following two types of voice memos can be recorded with Voice Memo:

“Voice memo during a call” to record the other party’s voice during a call; and “Voice memo in Standby” to record your voice in Standby.

- Only one entry, either a voice memo during a call or a voice memo in Standby, can be saved on handset. When a new voice memo is recorded, the previously saved entry is overwritten.
- The available recording time is 20 seconds for both types of voice memos.
- See P. 3-5 and P. 3-18 for playing and deleting a recorded voice memo.

Recording the Other Party’s Voice

1 Press and hold during a call

A short beep sounds through the earpiece, and recording starts. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.

■ To Stop Recording

➡  or Press and hold 

Recording Your Voice

1 ➡ **Tools** ➡ ➡ **Voice Memo** ➡

2 **YES** ➡ ➡ **Record your voice**

Speak into microphone after short beep sounds through earpiece. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.

■ To Stop Recording

➡ 

Tip

- Recording stops automatically when a call arrives, alarm goes off or another function is activated.



Calculator

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Calculator** ⇒

2 Enter numbers with Keypad
⇒ Enter +, -, × or ÷ with Multi Selector

■ To Calculate Negative Numbers
⇒ ⇒ Enter numbers with keypad ⇒ Enter +, -, × or ÷ with Multi Selector

3 Result appears.

Available Functions

Enter Number	-
+ (Add)	
- (Subtract)	
× (Multiply)	
÷ (Divide)	
= (Equal)	
Decimal Point	
Cancel Calculation	()
Clear Number	()

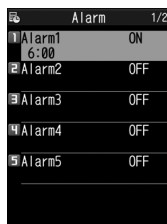
Tip

- If the calculation result exceeds 10 digits, .E appears.



Setting Alarm

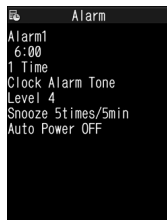
- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Alarm**



Alarm List

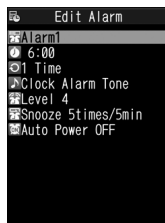
■ To View Alarm Entries

- ⇒ Select an entry ⇒



Alarm Details Window

- 2 Select an alarm ⇒



Alarm Setting Window

- 3 ⇒ ⇒ Enter title ⇒

Title appear in Alarm message.

- 4 ⇒ ⇒ Enter time ⇒

- 5 ⇒ ⇒ **1 Time, Daily** ()
or **Select Day** () ⇒

■ To Specify Days of the Week

- ⇒ **Select Day** () ⇒

Put checkmarks to days of the week ⇒

- 6 ⇒ ⇒ Select an alarm tone type ⇒ (⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select an alarm tone ⇒)

Folders are unavailable when **Clock Alarm Tone** or **OFF** is selected.

- 7 ⇒ ⇒ to adjust volume ⇒

- 8 ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ⇒ Enter number of activation times
⇒ Enter time interval

■ To Cancel Snooze

- ⇒ **OFF** ⇒ ⇒ Enter ringing duration

- 9 ⇒ ⇒ **ON** or **OFF** ⇒ ⇒



Alarm

● Alarm Activation Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm is activated and animation appears (on Display). When the auto power-on function is set to **ON** in Alarm Setting window, handset is automatically turned on, if it has been off, to activate the alarm.

Press any key to stop the alarm tone. When Snooze is set to **OFF**, press any key again to cancel the alarm with two short beeps, and return to the window before the alarm activation.

When Snooze is set to **ON**, the alarm sounds repeatedly in the set time interval. Press  to cancel Snooze with two short beeps.

Note

- The alarm and snooze cancellation beeps do not sound when **Keypad Sound** is set to **OFF**.
- Set the auto power-on function to **OFF** in Alarm Setting window and turn off handset, when you are near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, on an aircraft or in a hospital where handset use is prohibited.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.
- If the alarm activation time comes during a call, Snooze does not work even if it is set to **ON**.

Canceling Alarm

- 1** [Alarm List] → Select an alarm → 

Each time you press , the alarm toggles between ON and OFF.

Tip

- Alarm settings are retained even if the alarm is canceled.

More Features

Advanced

Alarm

- Cancel All Alarms
- Edit Alarm Settings

(▶ P. 11-26)

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(▶ P. 14-3)



Bar Code Reader

JAN codes and QR codes can be scanned by Bar Code Reader using handset camera.

About JAN & QR Codes

●JAN Code

A bar code made of vertical lines (bars) with different widths and spaces in between, representing numbers. Handset can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

●QR Code

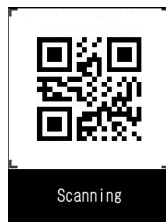
A two-dimensional code representing alphanumerics, kanji, kana, or pictographs. Some QR codes are made up of several data areas that are scanned as individual QR codes and then automatically combined as one QR code.

Scanning Bar Codes

- Position handset camera at a distance of 10 cm from the bar code.

1

2 Frame the bar code in the recognition field



Bar Code Scanning Window

Scanning starts automatically.

┐, ┌, └ and ┘ indicate the corners of the recognition field.

■To Cancel Scanning

■To Adjust Zoom

(Zoom out) or (Zoom in)

■To Use Auto Focus

■To Scan a QR Code Made of Several Data Areas (QR Codes)

(twice) Scan a QR code

Repeat this step to scan other QR codes.

All component QR codes must be scanned in order to access or save scanned data on handset.

3 Check scanned data

■To Discard Scanned Data

4

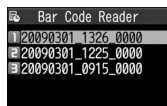
Tip

- A JAN code/QR code must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition field.
- Scanning may take a while.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on the size, version or print quality, or due to scratches, stains, damage or the reflection of light.



Checking Scanned Data

- 1** [Bar Code Scanning]
window → → **Reading**
Data List →



Scanned Bar Code Data List Window

- 2** Select an entry →



Scanned Bar Code Data Details Window

Tip

- Characters that are not supported by Bar Code Reader are replaced with spaces (blanks).

More Features

Advanced

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Copy Text
- Edit Title of Scanned Data
- Delete Scanned Data

(▶ P. 11-27)



Text Reader

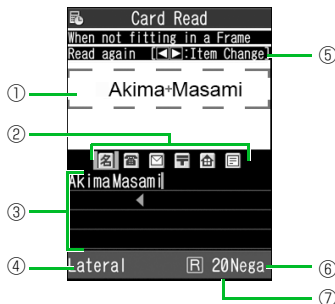
Use Text Reader to scan printed text.

Scan Modes

Card read	Scan name, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on business cards, and save all scanned data collectively as a Phone Book entry.
Compose message	Scan address, subject or message text, and open Composition (S! Mail) window with the address, subject or message text entered.
URL	Scan URL, and access the page or save the URL to Bookmark.
Mail address	Scan e-mail address, and compose an S! Mail to the address.
Phone number	Scan phone number, and make a call to the number.

Free memo	Scan Japanese or English text, and save the text to Text Memo.
-----------	--

Text Scanning Window



Text Scanning Window

①	Recognition Frame
②	Scan Item Icons Name Phone number E-mail address Postal code Address Memo To Address Sub Subject Message text
③	Recognized Text Field
④	Recognition Mode
⑤	Key Guidance
⑥	Negative Mode <i>Nega</i> appears when <i>NEGA/POSI Mode</i> is set to <i>Negative Fix</i> .
⑦	Remaining Number of Characters That Can be Scanned

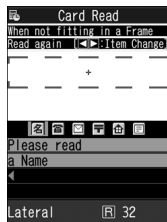


Scanning Text

- Position handset camera at a distance of 10 cm from the text.

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Text Reader** ⇒

2 **New** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a scan mode** ⇒



Text Scanning Window

3 to select a scan item icon
⇒ **Frame text in the recognition frame**

■ **To Adjust Zoom**

⇒ (Zoom in) or (Zoom out)

4

The text is scanned.
The recognized text appears.

■ **To Rescan the Same Text**

⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

■ **When Scanned Text Overflows Recognized Text Field**

⇒ to scroll the field

■ **To Save Scanned Text without Correcting It**

⇒

■ **To Scan Following Text**

⇒ ⇒ Frame text in the recognition frame (include several scanned characters of the preceding text) ⇒

■ **To Scan Another Item**

⇒ ⇒ to select a scan item icon
⇒ Frame text in the recognition frame ⇒

5 ⇒ **Store** ⇒

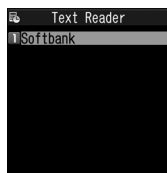
Tip

- Text must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition frame.
- When *Processing* ... appears, do not move handset.
- Handwritten text is not recognized.
- Text may not be recognized correctly when:
 - Faxed or copied text is scanned.
 - Decorated characters are scanned.
 - Spaces between characters are uneven.
 - Text is indistinguishable from the background.
 - Ambient lighting is inappropriate.



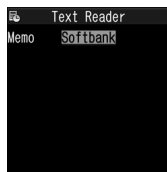
Checking Scanned Text

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Text Reader** ⇒ ⇒ **Reading Data List** ⇒



Scanned Text List Window

- 2 Select an entry ⇒



Scanned Text Details Window

More Features

Advanced

Scanning Text

- Correct Scanned Text
- Edit Scanned Text
- Set Printing Status of Text
- Set Guidance ON/OFF
- Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

(▶ P. 11-26)

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Search Phone Book
- Save a Text Memo
- Copy Text
- Delete Scanned Data

(▶ P. 11-27)



Osaifu-Keitai®

Start Here

- [Lifestyle-Appli List] window P. 11-3
 [Call Remote Lock Setting] window P. 11-5

Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties

- [Lifestyle-Appli List] window →
 Select a Lifestyle-Appli → [P] →
Properties → [■]

Check Memory Status

- [Lifestyle-Appli List] window → [P]
 → **Memory Info** → [■]

Delete a Lifestyle-Appli

- [Lifestyle-Appli List] window →
 Select a Lifestyle-Appli → [P] →
Delete → [■] → **YES** → [■]

Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers

- [Call Remote Lock Setting] window → Select phone number
 → [■] → Change phone number →
 [■] → **YES** → [■] → [■]

Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

- [Call Remote Lock Setting] window → Select phone number
 → [P] → **Delete this** or **Delete All**
 → [■] → **YES** → [■]

Life History Viewer

Start Here

- [Life History Viewer] window P. 11-7
 [Life History Viewer Closeup] window P. 11-7

Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer

- [Life History Viewer] window or [Life History Viewer Closeup] window → [P] → **Display setting**
 → [■] → Select a data item → [■]
 → Select an item → [■] → [■]
 [Hand icon] Only checked items appear in Life History Viewer window.

Update Life History Viewer

- [Life History Viewer] window or [Life History Viewer Closeup] window → [P] → **Reload** → [■]



Schedule

Start Here

[Schedule] window P. 11-8
 [Event Edit] window P. 11-8
 [Event List] window P. 11-9
 [Event Details] window P. 11-10

Sort Events by Icon

[Schedule] window, [Event List] window or [Event Details] window ⇒  ⇒ **Icon Display** ⇒  ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ 

Check Number of Saved Events

[Schedule] window ⇒  ⇒ **No. of Schedules** ⇒ 

Edit an Event

[Event List] window/ [Event Details] window (⇒ Select an event) ⇒  ⇒ **Edit** ⇒  ⇒ Edit each item ⇒ 

Copy an Event

[Event List] window/ [Event Details] window ⇒  ⇒ **Copy** ⇒  ⇒ Edit each item ⇒ 
 Repetition setting of an event is canceled when it is copied.

Make/Cancel Secret Setting of an Event

- To Make Secret Setting
 [Event Edit] window ⇒ Enter each item ⇒ 
- To Cancel Secret Setting
 [Event List] window/ [Event Details] window ⇒  ⇒ **Release Secret** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 
 Before making/canceling secret setting, set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-8).

Delete All Events

[Schedule] window, [Event List] window or [Event Details] window ⇒  ⇒ **Delete** ⇒  ⇒ **Delete All** ⇒  ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒  ⇒ Select an item ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

Reset Holidays

[Schedule] window ⇒  ⇒ **Reset Holiday** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 



Search Information by Keyword

[Event Details] window → [P] → **Quick Search** → [■] → **Enter Keyword** → [■] → Enter keyword → [■] → [Y] or [Browser] → [■] → Select an item from search results → [■]

👉 To select a keyword from previous entries, select **History**, press [■], select a keyword, and then press [■].

👉 To enter a keyword with Quote keyword, select **Quote Keyword**, press [■], and select range start/end.

To Do List

Start Here

[Task List] window P. 11-12

[Task Details] window P. 11-12

Sort Tasks by Category

[Task List] window → [P] → **Category Display** → [■] → Select a category → [■]

Change Order of Tasks

[Task List] window → [P] → **Sort/Filter** → [■] → Select a criterion → [■]

Set Task Status

[Task List] window/ [Task Details] window (→ Select a task) → [P] → **Change Status** → [■] → Select a status → [■]

👉 The set status is indicated by the status icon in Task List window and in Task Details window.

👉 When **Completion** is set as status, enter the completion date.

Delete All Tasks

[Task List] window → [P] → **Delete** → [■] → **Delete All** → [■] → Enter Security Code → [■] → **YES** → [■]

Text Memo

Start Here

[Text Memo List] window P. 11-13

Save a Text Memo to Schedule

[Text Memo List] window → Select a text memo → [P] → **Edit Schedule** → [■] → Enter each item → [■]

👉 Event Edit window opens with the text memo details set as event content.

Sort Text Memos by Category

[Text Memo List] window → Select a text memo → [P] → **Category** → [■] → Select a category → [■]

Check Text Memo Information

[Text Memo List] window → Select a text memo → [P] → **Text Memo Info** → [■]



Delete All Text Memos

[Text Memo List] window → [F] →
Delete → [■] → **Delete All** → [■] →
 Enter Security Code → [■] → **YES**
 → [■]

Alarm

Start Here

[Alarm List] P. 11-16
 [Alarm Details] window P. 11-16

Cancel All Alarms

[Alarm List] / [Alarm Details]
 window → [F] → **Release All** → [■]
 → **YES** → [■]

Edit Alarm Settings

[Alarm List] → Select an alarm →
 [☑] → Edit each item → [☑]

Bar Code Reader & Text Reader

Start Here

[Scanned Bar Code Data List] window P. 11-19
 [Scanned Bar Code Data Details]
 window P. 11-19
 [Text Scanning] window P. 11-21
 [Scanned Text List] window P. 11-22
 [Scanned Text Details] window P. 11-22

Scanning Text

Correct Scanned Text

[Text Scanning] window → Scan
 text → [C] to move cursor to the
 character you want to correct →
 Press the number key
 corresponding to the correct
 character on the suggestion list
 [☞] Press [✕] to toggle between upper
 case and lower case.

Edit Scanned Text

[Text Scanning] window → Scan
 text → [F] → **Edit** → [■] → Edit
 text using keypad
 [☞] To cancel editing and return to
 scanned text, press [F], select *Select*
Recog. Data and then press [■].

Set Printing Status of Text

[Text Scanning] window → [F] →
NEGA/POSI Mode → [■] → **Auto**
setting, Positive Fix or **Negative**
Fix → [■]

[☞] Set to *Positive Fix* when dark-colored
 text is printed on a light-colored
 background.
 [☞] Set to *Negative Fix* when light-
 colored text is printed on a dark-
 colored background.

Set Guidance ON/OFF

[Text Scanning] window → [F] →
Guidance OFF or **Guidance ON** →
 [■]



Advanced Features

Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

[Text Scanning] window → → **Vertical Writing or Lateral Writing** →

Using Scanned Data

Make a Call

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window → Select a phone number → → **Dialing** → → **Voice Phone or Video Call** → → **Dial** → → Talk → to end call

Compose a Message

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window → Select an e-mail address → → **Create S! Mail** → → Compose and send S! Mail

Access the Internet

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window → Select a URL → → **Internet** → → **YES** →

Save to Phone Book

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window → Select an item → → **Add to Phone Book** →

- To Select *Phone*
 - *Phone* → → *New or Add* → (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → (twice)) → Edit each item → (→ **YES** →
- To Select *USIM*
 - *USIM* → → *New or Overwrite* → (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → (twice)) → Edit each item → (→ **Overwrite*** or **Add** →

* To select **Overwrite**, press , select **YES**, then press .

Save a Bookmark

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] window/ [Scanned Text Details] window → Select a URL → → **Add Bookmark** → (twice) → Select a folder →

Search Phone Book

[Scanned Text Details] window → Select an item → → **Search Phone Book** → → Search Phone Book

Save a Text Memo

[Scanned Text Details] window → Select an item → → **Add to Memo** →



Copy Text

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details]
window/ [Scanned Text Details]
window →  → **Copy** →  →
Select beginning of characters →
 → Select end of characters →

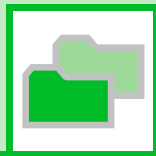

Edit Title of Scanned Data

[Scanned Bar Code Data List]
window → Select an entry → 
→ **Edit Title** →  → Edit title →


Delete Scanned Data

[Scanned Bar Code Data List]
window/ [Scanned Text List]
window → Select an entry → 
● To Select *Delete This*
→ *Delete This* →  → YES → 
● To Select *Delete All*
→ *Delete All* →  → Enter Security
Code →  → YES → 

Data Management



About Data Folder	12-2	Managing Memory Cards	12-12
Accessing Files	12-3	Formatting a Memory Card	12-12
Opening Files.....	12-3	Accessing Memory Card Data	12-12
Quick Album (Slideshow)	12-4	Copying Data between Handset &	
Creating Animations.....	12-5	Memory Card	12-13
Using Playlist (Melodies).....	12-6	Configuring Print Settings of Images...	12-14
Using Playlists (Videos)	12-6	Advanced Features.....	12-15
Editing Files.....	12-8	Accessing Files.....	12-15
Editing Still Images	12-8	Editing Files.....	12-16
Editing Videos	12-9	Managing Folders.....	12-17
File & Folder Management	12-10	Managing Files.....	12-17
Creating a Folder	12-10	Memory Card	12-18
Moving Files to a Different Folder	12-10		
About Memory Card	12-11		
Inserting & Removing a Memory			
Card.....	12-11		

12



About Data Folder

Use Data Folder to manage data on handset. New data created by handset functions or obtained via the Internet or mail are saved to different folders according to the file format.

- Some folders contain links. Use the links to access download sites in Yahoo! Keitai.

Folders & Files in Data Folder

My Picture

Image files such as those taken by camera and downloaded My Pictograms

Melody

Melodies and audio files recorded by Voice Announce

S! Appli

Downloaded S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli

Ring Songs · Music

Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full®, downloaded music files and music files transferred using MTP mode

Videos

Video files such as those recorded by camera

Books

Downloaded book files

Widget

Downloaded widgets files

TV

Recorded programs¹ and still images captured from programs²

- 1 Can be saved on memory card only.
- 2 Can be saved on handset only.

When Data Folder memory is full or number of files savable is reached, a message asks whether to delete unnecessary data (note, however, this message may not appear depending on the data type). Follow the steps below to delete data:

YES ⇨ ☐ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ☐ ⇨ Select a data item ⇨ ☐ ⇨ ☐ ⇨ YES ⇨ ☐

- You may need to select a data type before selecting a folder if the data you want to delete has multiple storage areas.
- You may need to select more than one data item to delete depending on the degree of insufficient memory.



Opening Files

1 → **Data Folder** →

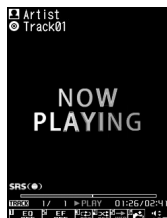
2 Select a folder and a sub folder →



File List Window

■ To Open a File on Memory Card
→ **microSD** →

3 Select a file →



Opened File Window

Functions in My Picture Window

Selecting a file in My Picture folder opens a window such as below.



My Picture Window

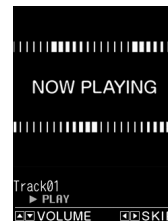
The following operations are possible in My Picture window.

Switch Files	
Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen	
Zoom In/Zoom Out*	→ or
Show at Actual Size*	→
Scroll Large-sized or Zoomed-in Image*	

* Press to return to the original size.

Functions in Melody Window

Selecting a file in Melody folder opens a window such as below.



Melody Window

The following operations are possible in Melody window.

Switch Files	
Adjust Volume	
Stop	
End	CLEAR



Quick Album (Slideshow)

View JPEG images saved in My Picture. Set images to switch automatically or manually.

- Quick Album is also available for JPEG images saved to Memory Cards.

1 **Data Folder**



Quick Album Window

Tip

- Alternatively, activate this function from
- Display folder images in the following order.
 - ① Inbox
 - ② Camera
 - ③ User created folder
 - ④ microSD pictures

Keys Available in Quick Album

● During Manual Play

Previous/next image	
Zoom in/out	
Image scroll (zoomed in)	1 - 9 Scroll in below directions.

Return to original size (zoomed in/out)	
Image switch effect (Slide → Fade → Cube → RGB)	• Effect changes with each press. Slide: Slides to right or left - Fade: Fade in/out - Cube: Rotates as cube - RGB: Splits into red, green, and blue then rotates
Detect face and zoom in (Face)	• Press to toggle when several faces are detected.
Start Photo Slide-show (auto play)	
End Photo Slide-show (auto play)	

● During Auto Play



● When Activated from Quick Menu

Toggle auto play/manual play	☐
Previous image (manual play)	
Next image (manual play)	
End Quick Album	Press and hold

Creating Animations

Create animations each of which is made of up to 20 frames using still images in My Picture folder.

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ⇒ **Original Animation** ⇒



Original Animation List Window

- 2 **<New>** ⇒
- 3 **Select a frame** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a still image** ⇒
Repeat this step to assign a series of images to their respective frames.

■ To Cancel an Assigned Image

⇒ Select a frame ⇒ ⇒ **Release This** ⇒

4

Note

- Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating animations.
- Some images may be unavailable depending on the image size or file size.
- Images saved on external memory devices (i.e. memory card) cannot be used.

Tip

- Select an animation you created in Original Animation List window and press to play the animation.



Using Playlist (Melodies)

Save melodies to Playlist to play back in the saved order.

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Melody** ⇒ ⇒ **Playlist** ⇒ ⇒ **Edit Playlist** ⇒

■ To Clear Playlist

- ⇒ ⇒ **Release Playlist** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

- 2 **Select a number** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a melody** ⇒

Repeat this step to assign other melodies to different numbers.

■ To Cancel an Assigned Melody

- ⇒ **Select a number** ⇒ ⇒ **Release This** ⇒

- 3

Tip

- Select Playlist folder in Melody and press to play Playlist.
- Changing file names of melodies on Playlist, or deleting melody files clears Playlist.

Using Playlists (Videos)

Save videos to a playlist to play them in the playlist order.

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Videos** ⇒ ⇒ **Playlist** ⇒



Playlist List Window

- 2 **Select a playlist** ⇒ ⇒ **Edit Playlist** ⇒



3 Select a number →  →

Select a folder →  →

Select a video → 

Repeat this step to assign other videos to different numbers.

■ **To Cancel an Assigned Video**

→ Select a number →  →

Release This →  → **YES** → 

4 

Tip

- Select a playlist in Playlist List window and press  to play the playlist.

More Features

Advanced

Opening Files

- Check File Information
- Change Order of Files
- Set an Image to Appear in Standby
- Set a Video to Appear in Standby
- Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

(▶ P. 12-15)

Viewing Images

- Play Animation from the Beginning
- Compose Four Images to Make One
- Set Display Size of an Image
- Edit Title of an Original Animation
- Cancel an Original Animation

(▶ P. 12-15)

Playing Melodies

- Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

(▶ P. 12-16)

Playing Videos

- Switch Display Format of File List Window
- Clear a Playlist

(▶ P. 12-16)

Customize

Display Settings

- Set Image List View

(▶ P. 14-4)



Editing Still Images

Basic Flow of Operations

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select an image ⇒



My Picture Window

- 2 ⇒ **Edit Image** ⇒ ⇒ Select an editing option ⇒ ⇒ Edit image
- 3 to end editing

- 4 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒

Selecting **YES** overwrites the original image. Selecting **NO** saves the edited image as a new file in the same folder.

Note

- Only images with can be edited.
- Repeated editing may cause deterioration of image quality or increased file size.

Adding a Frame

- 1 [My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Edit Image** ⇒ ⇒ **Frame** ⇒

- 2 Select a frame ⇒

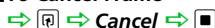
■ To Change Frame



■ To Rotate Frame 180 Degrees



■ To Cancel Frame



- 3

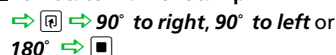
- 4 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒

Adding Stamps

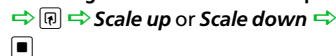
- 1 [My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Edit Image** ⇒ ⇒ **Marker Stamp** ⇒

- 2 Select a marker stamp ⇒

■ To Rotate Marker Stamp



■ To Enlarge/Reduce Marker Stamp

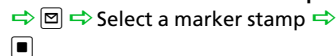


■ To Cancel Marker Stamp



- 3 to select a position ⇒

■ To Paste Another Marker Stamp



- 4

- 5 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒



Pasting a Text Stamp

- 1 [My Picture] window 
  **Edit Image** 
 Character Stamp 
- 2 Enter text 
 ■ To Edit Text
   **Character input** 
 Enter text 
 ■ To Change Text Color
   **Character Color** 
 Select a color 
 Press  to toggle color palettes.
 ■ To Change Font Type
   **Font Type** 
 Gothic or Ming-Cho 
 ■ To Change Font Size
   **Font Size**   Select
 a font size 
- 3  to select a position 
- 4 
- 5   **YES or NO** 

Cropping an Image

- 1 [My Picture] window 
  **Edit Image**   **Trim away** 
- 2 Select a size   to position cropping area 
- 3 
- 4   **YES or NO** 

Editing Videos

Clip the desired scenes from saved videos.

- 1   **Data Folder**  
 Videos   **Select a folder**   **Select a video**
   **Edit Video** 
 - 2   **Trim Videos**  
 Any Size or 295KB 
 - 3 
- The video playback and clipping start at the same time.

■ To Start from a Halfway Point

-   At a desired point 
 

- 4  to stop 

Selected portion plays.

When **295KB** is selected, clipping stops automatically when the size of clipped video reaches 295 KB.

- 5  (twice)  **YES** 

Note

- Only QCIF (176 × 144) or smaller videos with  can be clipped.
- Editing may cause deterioration of image quality.

More Features

Advanced

Editing Files

- Retouch an Image
- Adjust Image Brightness
- Rotate an Image
- Change Image Size
- Correct Backlight
- Refresh Skin Tone

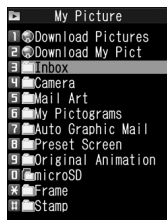
(▶ P. 12-16)



Creating a Folder

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒
Select a folder type ⇒

<Example> When My Picture is Selected



Folder List Window

- 2 ⇒ **Add Folder** ⇒ ⇒
Enter folder name ⇒

Tip

- Folders can only be created in handset Data Folder.

Moving Files to a Different Folder

- 1 [File List] window ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ **Move** ⇒

- 2 **Move this** ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒
YES ⇒

■ To Move Multiple Files

- ⇒ **Move selected** ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ Repeat the same step to specify other files ⇒ ⇒
YES ⇒

■ To Move All Files in a Folder

- ⇒ **Move all** ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒



More Features



Advanced

Managing Folders

- Edit a Folder Name
- Delete a Folder
- Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody or Videos Folder

(▶ P. 12-17)

Managing Files

- Edit a Title in My Picture File List Window
- Check Volume of Saved Files
- Edit a File Name
- Delete Files

(▶ P. 12-17)



About Memory Card

Save files to memory cards. Still images and videos shot with handset camera can be saved directly to memory card. Data can be copied and moved between handset and memory card. Data on memory card can also be accessed from Data Folder.

- Handset supports memory cards of up to 8 GB.
- Do not insert or remove memory cards when handset power is on.
- Insert memory cards properly. Otherwise, they cannot be used on handset.
- Do not affix stickers or labels to memory cards. As memory cards are very thin and precise mechanisms, even a thin sticker or label on a memory card may cause contact failure or destruction of data.
- Keep memory cards out of reach of infants who may accidentally swallow them or be injured.
- Do not remove a memory card or power off handset while writing and reading data with that memory card. It may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Access to memory cards may be unavailable when the battery level is low.

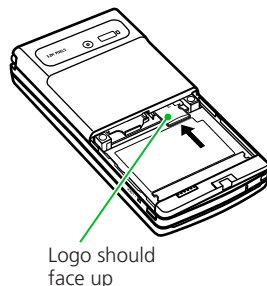
Inserting & Removing a Memory Card

Before inserting/removing a memory card, remove battery cover and battery referring to Battery Installation (P. 1-14).

Insertion

1 Insert memory card into Memory Card Slot until it locks

Insert gently with the printed logo facing up.



Tip

- If  appears in Display, there may be a contact failure. Remove and reinsert memory card.

Removal

1 Press and release

Gently pull out memory card.

Note

- Memory card may break if inserted or removed with force.



Formatting a Memory Card

- Format memory cards on handset only. Memory cards formatted on another device or PC may not work.
- Formatting a memory card deletes all the data on it.

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒

2 ⇒ **microSD format** ⇒
⇒ **Enter Security Code** ⇒
⇒ **YES** ⇒

Note

- Do not remove memory card while formatting. Handset/memory card malfunction may occur.
- Make sure that there is no important data left on the memory card before formatting it.

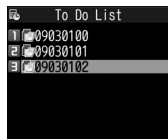
Accessing Memory Card Data

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒



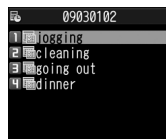
microSD Manager Window

2 Select a category ⇒



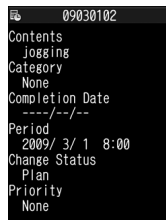
File List Window

3 Select a file ⇒



Data List Window

4 Select a data item ⇒



Data Details Window



Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card

Following items can be copied to/from handset and memory card:

PIM Data	Phone Book entries, Schedule, To Do List, text memos, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, bookmarks, content keys
Files in Data Folder	Still images, My Pictograms, Flash®, melodies, videos, songs

Copying Handset Data to Memory Card

Copy Phone Book entries, Schedule, messages, images, videos, etc.

<Example> Copy data in Data Folder to memory card

1 [Data List] window  
Copy to microSD 

2 **Copy this**   Select copy destination folder 

■ **To Copy Multiple Data**

 **Copy selected**   Select copy destination folder   Select a data item   Repeat the same step to specify other data   Select copy destination folder  **YES** 

■ **To Copy All Data**

 **Copy All**   Enter Security Code   **YES** 

Tip

- When one Phone Book entry or Schedule event that is set as secret is copied to memory card, its secret setting is canceled.
- Files attached to messages may be deleted.
- You need to select a destination folder when copying data in Data Folder.
- You must select the copy destination folder to copy data from Data Folder.
- Data saved in Pre-installed folders of Data Folder cannot be copied.
- Content keys are copied collectively at one time.

Copying Memory Card Data to Handset

● To Copy Images or Other Data to Handset

1   **Data Folder**   Select a folder type   **microSD**   Select a folder and sub-folder   Select a data item   **Copy to Phone** 

2 **Copy this** 

■ **To Copy Multiple Data**

 **Copy selected**   Select a data item   Repeat the same step to specify other data   **YES** 

■ **To Copy All Data**

 **Copy all**   Enter Security Code   **YES** 



● To Copy PIM Data to Handset

<Example> Copy Data in Overwrite Mode

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a PIM data type** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a data item** ⇒ ⇒ **Copy/OW to Phone** ⇒

2 **Copy This** ⇒

- To Copy Multiple Files
⇒ **Copy selected** ⇒ ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ Repeat the same step to specify other files ⇒

- To Copy All Files
⇒ **Copy All** ⇒

- 3 **Enter Security Code** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Note

- When copying memory card data to handset in overwrite mode, the corresponding data on handset is overwritten by the copied data.
- If the maximum storable number of items is reached when copying all items, copying stops at that point.

Configuring Print Settings of Images

Specify which images on memory card to be printed and the number of prints, etc. in DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) settings so that the images can be printed by DPOF compatible printers or print service shops.

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD** ⇒ ⇒ **DCIM** ⇒

- 2 **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a still image** ⇒ ⇒ **DPOF setting** ⇒

- 3 **DPOF set One** ⇒

- To Specify Multiple Images
⇒ **DPOF set Choice** ⇒ ⇒ Select a still image ⇒ ⇒ Repeat the same step to specify other images ⇒

- 4 **Print** ⇒ ⇒ **Print Sheets** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter number of prints** ⇒

- 5 **a Date** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** or **OFF** ⇒

- 6

More Features

Advanced

Memory Card

- Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card
- Check & Repair Memory Card
- Delete Data on Memory Card
- Cancel Print Settings of Images

(▶ P. 12-18)



Accessing Files

Start Here

[File List] window	P. 12-3
[Opened File] window	P. 12-3
[My Picture] window	P. 12-3
[Melody] window	P. 12-3
[Original Animation List] window	P. 12-5
[Playlist List] window	P. 12-6

Opening Files

Check File Information

[File List] window/ [Opened File] window (⇒ Select a file) ⇒ ⇒ **Image Info**, **Video Info** or **Melody Info** ⇒

Change Order of Files

[File List] window ⇒ ⇒ **Sort** ⇒ ⇒ Select a criterion ⇒

Set an Image to Appear in Standby

[File List] window/ [Opened File] window (⇒ Select a file) ⇒ ⇒ **Set as Display** ⇒ ⇒ **Stand-by Display** ⇒ (⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ⇒ Confirm preview ⇒
 Set images to appear when making calls or sending messages.

Set a Video to Appear in Standby

[File List] window ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ **Stand-by Display** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

[File List] window/ [Opened File] window (⇒ Select a file) ⇒ ⇒ **Ring Tone** ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒

Viewing Images

Play Animation from the Beginning

[My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Retry** ⇒

Compose Four Images to Make One

[File List] window ⇒ ⇒ **Composite Image** ⇒ ⇒ Select a position ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select an image ⇒ ⇒ Repeat the same step to assign three other images to their respective positions ⇒ ⇒
 Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating composite images.
 Copyright-protected images are unavailable.
 Images saved on memory card cannot be used.



Set Display Size of an Image

[My Picture] window → → **Set Image Disp.** → → **Normal** or **Fit in Display** →

Edit Title of an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] window
→ Select an animation → →
Edit Title → → Edit title →

Cancel an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] window
→ Select an animation → →
Release Animation → → **YES** →

Playing Melodies

Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

[Melody] window → → **Set Repeat Play** → → **ON** →

Playing Videos

Switch Display Format of File List Window

[File List] window → → **List Setting** → → **Title** or **Title+Image** →

Clear a Playlist

[Playlist List] window → Select a playlist → → **Release Playlist** →
 → **YES** →

Editing Files

Start Here

[My Picture] window P. 12-8

Editing Still Images

Retouch an Image

[My Picture] window → → **Edit Image** → → **Retouch** → →
Select an effect → (three times)
→ **YES** or **NO** →

Adjust Image Brightness

[My Picture] window → → **Edit Image** → → **Brightness** → →
→ to adjust brightness → (twice) → **YES** or **NO** →

Rotate an Image

[My Picture] window → → **Edit Image** → → **Rotate** → →
90° to right, 90° to left or **180°** →
 (three times) → **YES** or **NO** →



Change Image Size

[My Picture] window → → **Edit Image** → → **Change Size** →
 ⇒ Select a size → (three times)
 ⇒ **YES** or **NO** →

Correct Backlight

[My Picture] window → → **Edit Image** → → **Correct Backlight**
 ⇒ (three times) ⇒ **YES** or **NO**
 ⇒

Refresh Skin Tone

[My Picture] window → → **Edit Image** → → **Refresh Skin Tone**
 ⇒ (three times) ⇒ **YES** or **NO**
 ⇒

Managing Folders

Start Here

[Folder List] window P. 12-10

Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] window → Select a folder → → **Edit Folder Name**
 ⇒ ⇒ Edit folder name →
 Only names of user-created folders can be edited.

Delete a Folder

[Folder List] window → Select a folder → → **Delete Folder** →
 ⇒ Enter Security Code → ⇒ **YES** →
 Only user-created folders can be deleted.
 Files in the selected folder are also deleted.
 When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody or Videos Folder

[Folder List] window → → **Delete all Image** or **Delete All** →
 ⇒ Enter Security Code → ⇒ **YES** →
 When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

Managing Files

Start Here

[File List] window P. 12-3

Edit a Title in My Picture File List Window

[File List] window → Select an image file → → **Edit Title** →
 ⇒ Edit title →
 Titles of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.



Check Volume of Saved Files

[File List] window → [P] →
Memory Info → [■]

Edit a File Name

[File List] window → Select a file
→ [P] → **Edit File Name** → [■] →
Edit file name → [■]

Names of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

Delete Files

[File List] window → Select a file
→ [P] → **Delete** → [■]

- To Select *Delete this*
→ *Delete this* → [■] → YES → [■]
- To Select *Delete selected*
→ *Delete selected* → [■] → Select
files → [■] → [■] → YES → [■]
- To Select *Delete all*
→ *Delete all* → [■] → Enter Security
Code → [■] → YES → [■]

Memory Card

Start Here

[microSD Manager] window.. P. 12-12
[File List] window P. 12-12
[Data List] window P. 12-12
[Data Details] window P. 12-12

Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card

[microSD Manager] window, [File
List] window, [Data List] window
or [Data Details] window → [P] →
microSD Info → [■]

Check & Repair Memory Card

[microSD Manager] window → [P]
→ **Check microSD** → [■] → YES →



To cancel checking and repairing a
memory card, press [■] or [■].



Some memory cards may not be
repairable.

Delete Data on Memory Card

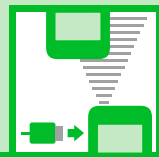
[File List] window → Select a data
item → [P] → **Delete** → [■]

- To Select *Delete this*
→ *Delete this* → [■] → YES → [■]
- To Select *Delete selected*
→ *Delete selected* → [■] → Select
files → [■] → [■] → YES → [■]
- To Select *Delete all*
→ *Delete all* → [■] → Enter Security
Code → [■] → YES → [■]

Cancel Print Settings of Images

[MENU] → **Data Folder** → [■] → **My
Picture** → [■] → **microSD** → [■] →
DCIM → [■] → Select a folder →
[■] → Select a still image → [P] →
DPOF setting → [■] → **DPOF set
One or DPOF set Choice** → [■] (→
Select an image → [■] → Repeat
the same step to specify other
images → [■] → **Print OFF or All
Print OFF** → [■]

Connectivity



Infrared	13-2
Getting Started	13-2
Transferring Data via Infrared	13-3
Bluetooth®	13-5
Overview.....	13-5
Using Bluetooth®	13-6
PC Connection	13-9
USB Driver.....	13-9
Data Transfer.....	13-9
Setting USB Mode	13-9
Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC	13-10
Using Handset as Modem.....	13-10
Advanced Features	13-11
Bluetooth®	13-11

13



Getting Started

Wirelessly exchange files with infrared compatible devices.

The following data can be transferred via infrared:

- Still images
- Melodies
- Videos
- My Pictograms
- Songs
- Books
- Widget
- Phone Book entries, Account Details
- Schedule events
- To Do List tasks
- Received messages, sent messages
- Draft messages
- Text memos
- Common Phrases (Templates)
- Own Dictionary data
- Bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser)

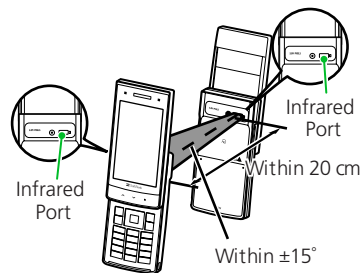
Note

- Handset cannot send all still images, melodies, videos, My Pictograms or songs at one time.

Precautions

- Data may not be sent depending on the status of the receiving device. Folder settings of received messages or bookmarks, etc., or contents of Graphic Mails may be lost or incorrectly transferred depending on the receiving handset model.
- Handset is out of range during infrared transmission, so such functions as voice and video calls, the Internet access and sending/receiving S! Mails are unavailable. This may continue even after infrared transmission is finished.
- Transferring data may take a while depending on the amount of data. Some data may not be received by handset.
- During transmission, progress bar shows approximate number of files transferred. Note that actual progress may be faster.
- Some pictographs and symbols in messages and Phone Book entries may not be received by handset correctly.
- All the still images on handset are overwritten, even those set as Phone Book entry images, if handset receives all still images at once.

- Align Infrared Ports of both sending and receiving devices, as shown below.



- Do not move either device until a message appears indicating completion of data transmission. Do not place any objects between the devices. Do not obstruct Infrared Ports.
- Infrared transmission may be disrupted by direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lighting or near other infrared devices.



Authentication Password

To transfer multiple files at once, the same authentication password must be entered on both sending and receiving devices.

Transferring Data via Infrared

Sending One File

Send one file at a time from a data list window/data details window.

- 1 In a data list window, select a file or open a data details window   **Send Ir Data** 

■ To Send a JPEG Image

In a data list window 

This enables faster transmission.

- 2 Set the receiving device to receive data

- 3 Align Infrared Ports  **YES**



Transfer starts.

When the file is sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.

■ To Cancel Transfer



Tip

- In the case of high-speed transmission of JPEG images, the receiving device may fail to receive images, even when the image transmission is successfully completed by the sending device.

Receiving One File

- 1   **Tools**  **Receive Ir Data**   **Receive** 

- 2 Align Infrared Ports

Transfer starts.

■ To Cancel Transfer



- 3 When file is received  **YES**



File is saved to handset.

File is discarded if no operation is done in about 30 seconds of transfer.

Sending All Files

Send all files at one time from a data list window/data details window.

- 1 In a data list window/data details window   **Send All Ir Data** 

- 2 Enter Security Code   Enter authentication password

- 3 Set the receiving device to receive data

- 4 Align Infrared Ports  **YES**



Transfer starts.

When all files are sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.

■ To Cancel Transfer





Receiving All Files

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Receive Ir Data** ⇒ ⇒ **Receive All** ⇒

2 **Enter Security Code** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter authentication password**

3 **Align Infrared Ports** ⇒ **YES** ⇒

4 **When an overwrite confirmation appears** ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Transfer starts.

When files are saved to handset, a saving completed message appears.

■ **To Cancel Transfer**



Note

- When handset receives all files, the corresponding files on handset are overwritten. For example, when handset receives all messages, all the messages on handset including protected ones are overwritten; and when it receives all Phone Book data or Schedule data, all the Phone Book entries or events, including those set as secret, are overwritten.
- Receiving of data ends automatically if data reaches the maximum storable capacity.



More Features



Customize

Phone Book

- Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared

(▶ P. 14-16)



Overview

Transmit data by wireless connection between Bluetooth® compatible devices (wireless headset, handsfree device, audio device, etc.).
Handset Bluetooth® specifications are as follows.

Version	Bluetooth® standard Ver. 2.0 + EDR compliant
Profiles	HSP: Headset Profile HFP: Handsfree Profile A2DP: Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (stereo, high quality) AVRCP Audio/Video Remote Control Profile

Precautions

- Handset is not guaranteed for connection/operation with all Bluetooth® devices.
- Connected Bluetooth® devices must be certified as Bluetooth® standard as designated by Bluetooth® SIG.
- Depending on other party device characteristics/specifications, there may be inability to connect, incompatible operation/display methods, or inability to transmit data even if other party is Bluetooth® standard.
- The frequency band (2.4 GHz) used by Bluetooth® devices is shared with other kinds of devices. Interference from other devices may result in decreased transmission speed/distance or disconnection.
- Static noise may occur depending on the connection device and environment during wireless/handsfree talk.
- TV audio is unavailable with Bluetooth® devices non-compliant with the copyright protection standard SCMS-T.

● Handset Functions

Function	Description
Headset Profile	Wireless talk is available when connected to a wireless headset.
Handsfree Profile	Handsfree talk is available when connected to a car navi and using a microphone-speaker.
Audio Profile	Enjoy music/TV audio when connected to a wireless headset and audio device.

Note

- When connected to a wireless headset or handsfree compatible device, a ring tone sounds when **Forward Ring Tone** is set to **OFF** and **Headset Usage Setting** is set to **Headset+speaker**.



Using Bluetooth®

Adding a Bluetooth® Device

Search and add a device.

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ **Bluetooth** ⇒ **Bluetooth**



Bluetooth Menu

- 2 **Register New Devices** ⇒



Handset searches for devices.
Added device appears in Device List.

- 3 **Select device to add** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **Bluetooth passkey** ⇒ Enter the same Bluetooth® passkey (4 to 16 characters) for both sending/receiving devices. Receiving device must have passkey entered within 30 seconds after the sending device. Enter the designated passkey for a handsfree device (other party).

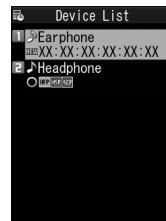
Tip

- When a Bluetooth® device is not added, search and add from *Device List* in Bluetooth® menu.
- You do not need to enter a passkey again for a device that has been added.

Connecting

Connect to an added device.

- 1 **[Bluetooth Menu] ⇒ Device List** ⇒



Device List

- **To Search for New Bluetooth® Device** ⇒

- 2 **Select target device** ⇒ Connecting to the device starts.

**3 Select service** →

flashes once connected.

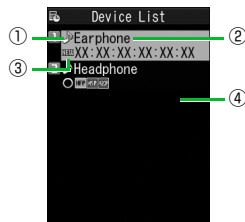
For a device capable of connecting to multiple services, a confirmation window will ask if you want to connect to another service.

■ **To Discontinue a Connected Service**

→ → YES →

Device List

The type of added device and service are shown by indicators.



Device List

①	Device Type ¹ PC Phone AV device Other
②	Device Name Bluetooth® address appears for non-added devices.
③	Status Added Not added (newly detected)
④	Services ² Headset Handsfree Audio Remote Control

1 An icon with a key mark appears for protected devices.

2 Service status appears as below.

Icon	Letters	Backgr.	Border	Status
	gray	—	—	Connection history: No
	white	—	gray	Connection history: Yes
	white	—	white	Connection standby
	black	green	white	Connected

Calling with Wireless Device

Connect wireless headsets or handsfree devices.

1 Connect to target device**2 Make/receive call with device**

■ **Switching Between Handset and Device**

→ Press and hold

Talk switches each time you press and hold



Playing music and audio with Wireless Device

Connect to a device with audio device to play Music Player music and TV audio.

1 Connect to target device

2 Play music, TV or etc.

Tip

- To adjust volume, use volume control on Bluetooth device.
- Connecting once to an audio device with audio service is stored as a connection history. When handset's Bluetooth® function is active (*Bluetooth ON*), audio devices with a connection history are automatically connected through audio service when playing music or TV.

Suspending Bluetooth® Connections

Suspend all Bluetooth® functions (connected or on standby) and disable Bluetooth.

1 [Bluetooth Menu] ⇒ **Bluetooth OFF** ⇒ ☐ ⇒ YES ⇒ ☐

■ To Activate Bluetooth®
⇒ [Bluetooth Menu] ⇒ **Bluetooth ON** ⇒ ☐

Setting Bluetooth® to Connection Standby

Set standby status for all added devices.

1 [Bluetooth Menu] ⇒ **Accept Registered** ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **Accept All** ⇒ ☐

■ To Release all Connection Standby
⇒ **Release All** ⇒ ☐

■ To Set Individually
⇒ **Separate Setting** ⇒ ☐ ⇒
Select service ⇒ ☐
Services with checked boxes enter Connection Standby.

More Features

Advanced

Bluetooth®

- Protect Added Device
- Change Name of Added Device
- Delete Added Device
- Open Information for Added Device
(▶ P. 13-11)

Customize

Bluetooth®

- Set Detection Time for Device
- Set Whether to Send Ring Tone for Voice Call, Video Call to Headset or Handsfree Device
- Set Whether to Enable Calling from External Device
- Check Handset Bluetooth® Information
(▶ P. 14-42)



Connect handset to a PC with a USB cable to use the following functions.

- USB cable is sold separately as an optional accessory.

Function	Description
Data transfer*	Transfer Phone Book, Schedule and To Do List data between handset and a PC (P. 13-9).
USB memory	Use memory card inserted in handset as an external drive of a PC to read and write data with memory card (P. 13-10).

* USB driver must be installed in advance.

USB Driver

This software is required for your handset to connect with a PC. First install on your PC referring to the web site below for installation details.

<http://www.n-keitai2.com/guide/download>

Data Transfer

Use SoftBank Utility Software to connect with a PC via USB cable and use various kinds of data on a PC. See the following web site for software details.

<http://www.n-keitai2.com/guide/download/>

- USB Driver must be installed before using SoftBank Utility Software.
- Synchronization unavailable for Phone Book, Schedule, and To Do List.

Setting USB Mode

Set USB mode before connecting handset to your PC via USB cable.

To use a data transfer tool, or use handset as a modem for packet transmission, set USB mode to **Communication Mode**.

To access memory card data from a PC, set it to **microSD Mode**.

- 1** **Settings** **External Connection** **USB Mode Setting**
- 2** **Communication Mode or microSD Mode**



Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC

Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable, and access memory card data from the PC.

- Set *USB Mode Setting* to *microSD Mode* in advance.

1 Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable

This enables memory card data to be accessed from your PC.

2 When you are finished, disconnect handset from the PC

Follow the procedure for safely removing external devices (which differs slightly according to the operating system), when disconnecting handset from the PC.

Note

- Make sure handset and the PC are properly connected. Otherwise, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.
- If handset's battery is almost or completely empty, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost. Check handset's battery level and the power of your PC.
- Do not remove the USB cable while copying data from your PC to handset. If the USB cable is removed during data transfer, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.

Using Handset as Modem

Use handset as an external modem for packet transmission.

- Refer to the instructions of your Internet service provider or the manual of your PC for the network connection settings on your PC.
- To use "Access Internet" for data communication, you do not have to sign up with a service provider. For information about the service overview, access points and setting procedures, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).



Bluetooth®

Start Here

[Device List] P. 13-6, P. 13-7

Protect Added Device

[Device List] → Select target device →  → **Protection Setting** → 

 If already protected, select **Protection Setting** to cancel protection.

Change Name of Added Device

[Device List] → Select target device →  → **Change Device Name** →  → Enter device name → 

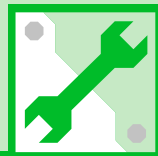
Delete Added Device

[Device List] → Select target device →  → **Delete** →  → **YES** → 

Open Information for Added Device

[Device List] → Select target device →  → **Description** → 

Customization



Clock, Display & Sounds.....	14-2
Phone Book & Calls	14-16
Mail.....	14-21
Internet	14-25
TV.....	14-27
Camera	14-31
Player & S! Appli.....	14-33
Entertainment.....	14-35
Other Settings	14-38

14



Clock

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Clock** ⇒ 

Hide Clock	⇒ <i>Clock Display</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Display</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>OFF</i> ⇒ 
Clock Size	⇒ <i>Clock Display</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Size</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a size ⇒ 
Clock Color	⇒ <i>Clock Display</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Color</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Black</i> or <i>White</i> ⇒ 
Set Auto Time Adjustment	⇒ <i>Set Main Time</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Auto Time Adjust</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Auto</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒  • Press  to change city/area name in Time Zone Selection field.
Manually Adjust Time	⇒ <i>Set Main Time</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Auto Time Adjust</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Manual(Date Time Set)</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒  ⇒ Enter date and time ⇒ 
Summer Time	⇒ <i>Set Main Time</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Summer Time</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ 
Time Zone (Sub Clock)	⇒ <i>Set Sub Clock</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Display Method</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Always</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ 
Hide Sub Clock	⇒ <i>Set Sub Clock</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Display Method</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>OFF</i> ⇒ 
Summer Time (Sub Clock)	⇒ <i>Set Sub Clock</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Summer Time</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ 
Time Zone Major City (Sub Clock)	⇒ <i>Set Sub Clock</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Area Name</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>Display</i> ⇒ 



Alarm

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Clock** ⇒

Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time	⇒ Alarm Setting ⇒ ⇒ Operation Preferred or Alarm Preferred ⇒
Change Alarm Tone	⇒ Clock Alarm Tone Set ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Set an alarm tone

Auto Power On/Off

Set Auto Power On/Off	⇒ Settings ⇒ ⇒ Clock ⇒ ⇒ Auto Power ON or Auto Power OFF ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ ⇒ Enter time ⇒ ⇒ 1 Time or Daily ⇒
-----------------------	--

Style Mode Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Style Mode Setting** ⇒

Set Display Design Collectively	⇒ Select a style ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ (⇒ YES ⇒)
Check Default Style Mode Settings	⇒ Select a style ⇒ • Details of some items can be checked by selecting an item and pressing .
Edit Title of a Style	⇒ Select a style ⇒ ⇒ Edit Title ⇒ ⇒ Edit title ⇒
Save Current Style Mode Settings as Favorite	⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Take Setting Info ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ • The current style mode settings can later be recalled collectively from お気に入り when they are changed.



Change Each Item for Favorites	⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Set an image
Clear All Favorite Settings	⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒ ⇒ Reset Setting Info ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒

Display Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒

Wallpaper	⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ⇒ Stand-by Display ⇒ ⇒ My Picture or Videos ⇒ ⇒ Set an image/video (⇒ Select a layout ⇒ (twice))
Show Calendar in Standby	⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ⇒ Stand-by Display ⇒ ⇒ Calendar ⇒ ⇒ Background ⇒ ⇒ Set an image ⇒ Select a layout ⇒ (twice) • Select No Background if you do not want any image in the background of the calendar. • Press , use to select the calendar and press to operate it. Use to switch to the previous/next month. Press to activate Schedule.
Set Random Display of Images in Standby	⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ⇒ Stand-by Display ⇒ ⇒ Random Display ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a layout ⇒ • Images switch at random each time handset is opened or returns to Standby.
Set a Wake-up Image	⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ⇒ Wake-up Display ⇒ ⇒ My Picture ⇒ ⇒ Set an image
Set a Wake-up Message	⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ⇒ Wake-up Display ⇒ ⇒ Message ⇒ ⇒ Enter message ⇒



Clock, Display & Sounds

Set an Outgoing Call/Message Image	⇒ <i>Display Setting</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Dialing, Video Call Dialing or Mail Sending</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ Set an image
Set an Incoming Call, Message Image or Video	⇒ <i>Display Setting</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Calling, Video Call Calling or Mail Receiving</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Select Calling Disp. or Select Receiving Disp.</i> ⇒ ■ (⇒ <i>My Picture or Videos</i> ⇒ ■) ⇒ Set an image/video
Set an Image for New Messages or Received Result Window	⇒ <i>Display Setting</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Retrieve New or Mail Rec'd Result</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ Set an image
Display Color Scheme	⇒ <i>Display Design</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Color Theme</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ■
Set a Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Pattern	⇒ <i>Display Design</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Icon Pattern</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Battery Icon or Antenna Icon</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ■
Change Softkey Color	⇒ <i>Display Design</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Soft Key</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ■
Set Font Type	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Font Type</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Gothic or Ming-cho</i> ⇒ ■ • Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Thickness	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Thickness</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Thin or Bold</i> ⇒ ■ • Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Sizes Collectively	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Character Size</i> ⇒ ■ ⇒ <i>Standard or X-large</i> ⇒ ■ • Items settable with <i>Separate Setting</i> for <i>Character Size</i> can be set collectively. • Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.



Set Font Size for Each Function Window	⇒ Font ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Character Size ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Separate Setting ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a window ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ☐ ⇒ - Alternatively, press and hold in Standby to make font settings. - In PC Site Browser, this procedure is only available in Small Screen view.
Interface Language	⇒ 言語選択 ⇒ ☐ ⇒ 日本語 or English ⇒ ☐ To change interface language from Japanese to English: ⇒ ⇒ 設定 ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ディスプレイ ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Language ⇒ ☐ ⇒ English ⇒ ☐
Set Image List View	⇒ Viewer Settings ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Picture or Title ⇒ ☐
Guard from Prying Eyes	⇒ Privacy Angle ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ON ⇒ ☐ - Alternatively, press and hold in Standby to toggle Privacy Angle on and off. - When Privacy Angle is set, Display is whitish and the viewing angle is narrower. - Turning power off/on cancels Privacy Angle.
Show Information of Messages Received When Watching TV	⇒ Quick Info Setting ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Display Sender or Display Sender/Subject ⇒ ☐
Set 3D Effect When Returning to Standby	⇒ Screen Effect ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ☐
Display Quality	⇒ Image Display Mode ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Normal, Vivid or Dynamic ⇒ ☐ - The Visual Image Effect setting in TV Effect has preference for TV display quality. - A preview image for each mode appears during selection in Image Display Mode to check the effect.
Charging Display (Handset Closed)	⇒ Display On Charge ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Wide Stand-by Clock, Photo Slide-show or OFF ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ☐



Backlight

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ⇒ **Backlight** ⇒

Set Backlight & Power Saving	⇒ Lighting ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ (⇒ Select time Backlight is lit ⇒) ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ (⇒ Enter a time before the Power Saver Mode is activated) • Press and hold to toggle TV Power Saving on/off. • When the Power Saver Mode is activated, nothing appears in Standby and Keypad backlight flashes. Pressing any key cancels the Power Saver Mode.
Set Backlight during Charging	⇒ Charging ⇒ ⇒ Standard or All Time ON ⇒
Set Brightness of Backlight	⇒ Brightness ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ⇒ Select a Level ⇒ • Set Brightness to Level 6 to use Display with the maximum brightness. Backlight is Level 4 by default. A higher setting reduces battery life.

Desktop Icons

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒

Set Desktop Theme	⇒ Desktop Icon ⇒ ⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ • Press to see details of the selected theme.
Change Icon Design of a Theme	⇒ Desktop Icon ⇒ ⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ ⇒ CHG Icon Image ⇒ ⇒ Select Icon Image or Default Icon Image ⇒ ⇒ Set an icon



Change Order of Icons of a Theme	⇒ Desktop Icon ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Sort ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a position ⇒ ☐
Copy Icons to Another Theme	⇒ Desktop Icon ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Copy ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Copy This, Copy Selected or Copy All ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a destination theme ⇒ ☐ (⇒ Select icons ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ☐) • When Copy Selected or Copy All is selected, select YES and press ☐ at the end of the procedure.
Move Icons to Another Theme	⇒ Desktop Icon ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Move ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Move This, Move Selected or Move All ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a destination theme ⇒ ☐ (⇒ Select icons ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ☐) ⇒ YES ⇒ ☐
Delete Icons of a Theme	⇒ Desktop Icon ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Delete ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Delete This, Delete selected or Delete All ⇒ ☐ (⇒ Select icons ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ☐) ⇒ YES ⇒ ☐
Show New Message Indicator as 3D Animation	⇒ 3D Display Setting ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ON ⇒ ☐

Menu Display Settings

Start Here ☐ ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **Menu Display Set** ⇒ ☐

List View and Details View	⇒ Menu Display ⇒ ☐ ⇒ List or Detail ⇒ ☐ • Select View for menus from ☐ ⇒ Settings ⇒ ☐ .
Set Main Menu Theme	⇒ Theme ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ☐



Clock, Display & Sounds

Change Icon Design (Original Theme)	⇒ Theme ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Original Theme ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a menu item ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Set an image • Change Main Menu icons to any preferred image.
Change Background (Original Theme)	⇒ Theme ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Original Theme ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Background Image ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Set an image • Change Main Menu background to any preferred image.
Reset Original Theme Settings	⇒ Theme ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Original Theme ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a menu item ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Reset or All reset ⇒ ☐ ⇒ YES ⇒ ☐ • This procedure is only available when any Original theme settings have been changed.
Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory	⇒ Memory Focus ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ON ⇒ ☐

Start Here



Add a Menu Item to Original Menu	⇒ <Not Recorded> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ☐ to select a function ⇒ ☐
Change Order of Original Menu Items	⇒ Select an item ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Sort ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a position ⇒ ☐
Cancel Original Menu Items	⇒ Select an item ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Release or Release All ⇒ ☐ ⇒ YES ⇒ ☐
Reset Original Menu	⇒ ☐ ⇒ Reset Org. Menu ⇒ ☐ ⇒ YES ⇒ ☐



Standby Indicators

Enable Indicator Selector

MENU ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ **Display** ⇒ **Icons Setting** ⇒ **ON**

- The indicators at the top of Display are enabled by pressing **Display** in Standby. Use **Icons Setting** to select an indicators and press **ON** to access the corresponding function.

Incoming Call/Message Alerts

Start Here **MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ **Incoming Call**

Adjust Ringtone Volume

⇒ **Ring Volume** ⇒ **Phone, Video Call or Mail** ⇒ **Volume**

- When **Step** is set, the ringtone volume increases every three seconds. When **Silent** is set, no ringtone sounds.

Set a Ringtone

⇒ **Select Ring Tone** ⇒ **Phone, Video Call or Mail** ⇒ **Select Ring Tone** ⇒ **Select an item** ⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ **Set a ringtone**

Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones

⇒ **Select Ring Tone** ⇒ **Phone, Video Call or Mail** ⇒ **Select Ring Tone** ⇒ **Random Melody** ⇒ **Select a folder**

- Melodies in the selected folder are played at random as ringtones.

Set Ringing Duration of Incoming Message Ringtone

⇒ **Mail Ring Time** ⇒ **Mail** ⇒ **ON** ⇒ **Enter ringing duration**

- When **OFF** is set, no ringtone sounds and handset does not vibrate when receiving messages.



Clock, Display & Sounds

Set Vibration*	⇒ Vibrator ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Phone, Video Call or Mail ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ☐ • When <i>Melody Linkage</i> is set, handset vibrates to the melody set as ringtone.
Set Illumination Color	⇒ Illumination ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Set Color ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Phone, Video Call or Mail ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ☐
Set Illumination Pattern	⇒ Illumination ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Set Pattern ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Standard or Melody Linkage ⇒ ☐ • Even when <i>Melody Linkage</i> is set, Illumination may not flash to the melody depending on the set ringtone.
Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls/New Messages	⇒ Illumination ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Missed Info ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ON ⇒ ☐
Set an Incoming Call/Message Image	⇒ Select Ring Tone ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Phone, Video Call or Mail ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select Calling Disp. or Select Receiving Disp. ⇒ ☐ (⇒ My Picture or Videos ⇒ ☐) ⇒ Set an image/video
Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls/Messages	⇒ Disp. Phone Book Image ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ON ⇒ ☐

* When *Vibrator* is not set to *OFF*, be careful not to let handset fall off a desk or slide too close to a stove, etc. when it vibrates.

Start Here ☐ ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ☐ ⇒ **Slide-style Setting** ⇒ ☐

Open New Mail Window by Opening Handset	⇒ Setting When Open ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Display New Mail ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ☐
Open Missed Calls Window by Opening Handset	⇒ Setting When Open ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Display Missed Call ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ☐



Answering Incoming Calls

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒

Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key

⇒ **Answer Setting** ⇒ ⇒ **Any Key Answer** ⇒

- Answer incoming voice calls by pressing a key from , , 0 - 9 , *, CLEAR , ☒ , 37 and ☐ . The any key answer function is disabled for incoming video calls.

Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

⇒ **Answer Setting** ⇒ ⇒ **Quick Silent** ⇒

- Mute the ringtone by pressing a key from 0 - 9 , *, CLEAR , ☒ (for voice calls only), 37 and ☐ or by opening handset.

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Slide-style Setting** ⇒

Set to Answer Calls by Opening Handset

⇒ **Setting When Open** ⇒ ⇒ **Answer Incoming** ⇒ ⇒ ☒

- When set to **ON**, opening handset starts call even if **Answer Setting** is set to **Quick Silent**.
- When set to **OFF**, operation follows **Answer Setting**.



Manner Mode

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒ ⇒ **Manner Mode Setting** ⇒

Set Manner Mode Type	⇒ Manner Mode Set ⇒ ⇒ Select a Manner Mode ⇒ When <i>Super Silent</i> is set, all tones emitted through the earpiece are also muted.
Configure Original Manner Mode	⇒ Manner Mode Set ⇒ ⇒ Original ⇒ ⇒ Set each item ⇒
Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Start	⇒ Manner Start Time ⇒ ⇒ Start Time Set1 or Start Time Set2 ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Enter time ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ 1 Time, Daily () or Select Day () ⇒ ⇒ (Select day ⇒) ⇒
Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Release	⇒ Manner Release Time ⇒ ⇒ Release Time Set1 or Release Time Set2 ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Enter time ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ 1 Time, Daily () or Select Day () ⇒ ⇒ (Select day ⇒) ⇒
Toggle Auto Manner Mode Start and Release On/Off	⇒ Manner Start Time or Manner Release Time ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ - On/off toggles each time you press . Settings (e.g., time) are not updated. - Use the following procedure to cancel all settings at once. ⇒ ⇒ Release All ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒



Checking Call Logs

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒ 

Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

⇒ **Disp. Call/Receive No.** ⇒  ⇒ Select a color ⇒ 

- Pressing  toggles the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.
- To reset the color settings to default, press .

Sounds

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ 

Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones

⇒ **Charge Sound** ⇒  ⇒ **ON** ⇒ 

Sound Emitted at Level 1 for First three Seconds

⇒ **Volume Restriction** ⇒  ⇒ **ON** ⇒ 

- Applies to ring tone and alarm.
- After three seconds pass, ring tone and alarm sounds at set volume.

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Slide-style Setting** ⇒ 

Set Handset Open/Close Sound

⇒ **Slide Sound** ⇒  ⇒ **Open Sound** or **Close Sound** ⇒ Select a sound ⇒ 
 ⇒ **Ring Time** ⇒  ⇒ Select time sound emitted ⇒ 

- Slide and close sounds not emitted when set **OFF**.



Start Here ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Voice Announce** ⇒

Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message	⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ⇒ Record sound (for about 15 seconds) • Press to stop recording.
Play Recorded Sound	⇒ Select an item with "★" ⇒
Delete Recorded Sound	⇒ Select an item with "★" ⇒ ⇒ Erase ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒

Earphone-Microphone

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒

Audio Output	⇒ External Connection ⇒ ⇒ Headset Usage Setting ⇒ ⇒ Headset+speaker or Headset Only ⇒
Microphone Setting	⇒ External Connection ⇒ ⇒ Headset Mic. Setting ⇒ ⇒ Built-in Microphone or Headset Microphone ⇒
Answer Calls Automatically	⇒ External Connection ⇒ ⇒ Auto Answer Setting ⇒ ⇒ Phone or Video Call ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ ⇒ Enter ring time
Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone	⇒ Dialing ⇒ ⇒ Headset SW to Dial ⇒ ⇒ Voice Call ⇒ ⇒ Select a Phone Book search method ⇒ ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒



Phone Book

Set Preferred Search Method	[Phone Book Search] window (P. 2-23) → Select a search method → → OK → • To cancel the preferred search method, press CLEAR in Phone Book Search window, select the search method with "★," and then press .
Change Group Name	[Phone Book Entry List] window (P. 2-23) → → Group Setting → → Select a group → → Edit group name → • The name remains the same only for <i>No Group</i> .
Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared	→ Tools → → Forwarding Image → → OFF →

S! Addressbook Back-up

Start Here → **Tools** → → **S! Addressbook Back-up** →

Set Auto Synchronize	→ Auto Sync Settings → → ON/OFF → → ON → → Enter Security Code → → Set synchronize timing → (→ Set synchronize cycle and day →) → Select synchronize type → → YES → (twice)
Check Auto Synchronize Settings	Auto Sync Settings → → Confirm Settings →



Outgoing Calls

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Dialing** ⇒

Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers	⇒ Prefix Setting ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Enter name ⇒ ⇒ Enter prefix numbers ⇒
Save Touch Tones	⇒ Pause Dial ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Enter touch tone numbers ⇒ • Press and hold to enter "P" (Pause).
Set Numbers after "*" as Sub Address	⇒ Sub-address Setting ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒

International Calls

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Dialing** ⇒ ⇒ **Int'l Dial Assistance** ⇒

Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with "+"	⇒ Auto Int'l Call Set. ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ ⇒ Select a country code ⇒ ⇒ 国際発信 ⇒ • When OFF is set, the international access code is not entered when you press and hold . • Select an international access code you set in IDD Prefix Setting .
Change a Country Code	⇒ Country Code Setting ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Enter country name ⇒ ⇒ Enter country code ⇒
Save an International Access Code	⇒ IDD Prefix Setting ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Enter international access name ⇒ ⇒ Enter international access code ⇒



Call Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Talk** ⇒

Set Reconnection Tone	⇒ Reconnect Signal ⇒ ⇒ High Tone or Low Tone ⇒
Set Noise Reduction	⇒ Noise Reduction ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒
Set Weak Signal Alarm	⇒ Quality Alarm ⇒ ⇒ High Tone or Low Tone ⇒ • Calls may be disconnected without sounding the alarm when signal suddenly becomes too weak.
Set Clarity of Other Party Voice	⇒ Hyper Clear Voice ⇒ ⇒ High, Low and OFF ⇒
Automatically Record During Voice Call	⇒ Auto Voice Memo ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ • Record latest 60 seconds of call (two recordings).
Set a Hold Message	⇒ Set Hold Tone ⇒ ⇒ On Hold Tone ⇒ ⇒ Select a hold tone ⇒

Call Costs

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Call Time/Charge** ⇒

Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost	⇒ Auto Reset Total Cost ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ Auto Reset ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒ • When ON is set, the total call cost indication is automatically reset to zero at twelve midnight on the first day of each month.
-----------------------------------	--



Set/Cancel a Maximum Call Cost Limit*	⇒ Set Max Cost Limit ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Enter cost limit ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ ⇒ Set alarm tone ⇒ Set alarm volume ⇒ ⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒ • A call ends automatically and appears in Display when the total call cost exceeds the set maximum limit. • When the set total call cost limit has been reached, all outgoing calls are disabled. To enable outgoing calls, set the maximum call cost limit to 0: ⇒ Set Max Cost Limit ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ (twice) ⇒ ⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒
---------------------------------------	--

* Cost display may not be available depending on your subscription. If unavailable, you will also be unable to set a cost limit.

Video Calls

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Video Call** ⇒

Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls	⇒ Select Image ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Pre-installed or Original ⇒ • To set an image other than the preinstalled image: ⇒ Original ⇒ ⇒ Change Setting ⇒ ⇒ Set an image
Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails	⇒ Auto Redial as Voice ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒
Set an Image to Appear in Main Window	⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ⇒ Main Display ⇒ ⇒ Other Side or My Side ⇒
Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls	⇒ Hands-free Switch ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒



Global Roaming

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Int'l Roaming Set** ⇒

Set Operator	⇒ NW Search Mode ⇒ ⇒ Manual ⇒ ⇒ Select an operator ⇒ • When <i>Auto</i> is set, an available operator is set automatically. • Use this procedure when handset is out of the service area of the currently used operator.
Activate Network Re-search for an Available Operator	⇒ NW Search Mode ⇒ ⇒ Network Re-search ⇒ ⇒ Select an operator ⇒ • An operator is available when <i>NW Search Mode</i> is set to <i>Manual</i>.
Set Priority for Operators	⇒ PLMN Setting ⇒ ⇒ Select an operator ⇒ ⇒ Change Priority ⇒ ⇒ Select a position on the priority list ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ • When <i>Auto</i> or <i>Network Re-search</i> is set under <i>NW Search Mode</i>, you are automatically connected to the highest priority operator among available operators.
Show Operator Name While Roaming	⇒ Display Operator Name ⇒ ⇒ Display ON ⇒



S! Mail Settings

Start Here  ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ 

Edit Header/Signature	⇒ Header/Signature ⇒  ⇒ Edit Header or Edit Signature ⇒  (twice) ⇒ Edit header/signature ⇒ 
Insert Header/Signature Automatically	⇒ Header/Signature ⇒  ⇒ Insert Setting ⇒  ⇒ Header or Signature ⇒  ⇒ 
Set to Check Delivery	⇒ S! Mail Settings ⇒  ⇒ Delivery Report ⇒  ⇒ ON ⇒  After a recipient receives your S! Mail, a message titled S! Mail Report is sent to your handset.

SMS Settings

Start Here  ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒  ⇒ **SMS Settings** ⇒ 

Set to Check Delivery	⇒ SMS Report Request ⇒  ⇒ ON ⇒  After a recipient receives your SMS message, a message titled SMS Report is sent to your handset.
Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages	⇒ SMS Validity Period ⇒  ⇒ Select a period ⇒  When None is set, SMS messages you send are not stored on the server.
Set SMS Input Language	⇒ SMS Input Character ⇒  ⇒ Japanese (70char.) or English (160char.) ⇒ 



Incoming Message Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒

Customize E-mail Address	⇒ Custom Mail Address ⇒ ⇒ Follow onscreen instructions
Do Not Show Emotion Indicators	⇒ Emotion/Keyword ⇒ ⇒ Take the checkmark off from Disp. Emotion ⇒
Show Keyword Indicators	⇒ Emotion/Keyword ⇒ ⇒ Put a checkmark to Disp. Keyword ⇒ Select a keyword entry field ⇒ ⇒ Enter keyword ⇒ ⇒ • When handset receives an S! Mail containing the specified keyword, a keyword indicator - appears. • In case a message contains both the content that matches an emotion indicator (P. 5-7) and a specified keyword, the keyword indicator takes priority.
Delete Keywords	⇒ Emotion/Keyword ⇒ ⇒ Select a keyword ⇒ ⇒ Delete Keyword or Delete All Keyword ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ⇒
Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation	⇒ Receiving Setting ⇒ ⇒ Alarm Preferred or Operation Preferred ⇒
Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages	⇒ Read Out Setting ⇒ ⇒ Read Out Received Mail ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Set Voice to Read Out Messages	⇒ Read Out Setting ⇒ ⇒ Select Voice ⇒ ⇒ Select a voice type ⇒
Set Manual Receive	⇒ S! Mail Settings ⇒ ⇒ Message Download ⇒ ⇒ Manual ⇒ • The entire text is receivable by user operation.



Reply Settings

Change Quotation Marks

☒ ⇒ Mail Setting ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Header/Signature ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Edit Quotation Marks ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Edit quotation mark ⇒ ☐

Message View Settings & Others

Start Here ☒ ⇒ Mail Setting ⇒ ☐

Set Message List View

⇒ Mail List Disp. ⇒ ☐ ⇒ 2 Lines, 1 Line or 1 Line+Body ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Subject, Name or Address ⇒ ☐

Play Attached Melodies Automatically

⇒ Start Attachment (auto) ⇒ ☐ ⇒ ON ⇒ ☐
• Automatic play only for received mail.

Set Number of Text Lines to Scroll

⇒ Scroll ⇒ ☐ ⇒ 1 Line, 3 Lines or 5 Lines ⇒ ☐

Set Font Size of Text

⇒ Font Size ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ☐

Check Mail Settings

⇒ Check Settings ⇒ ☐

Reset Mail Settings

⇒ Reset ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ☐ ⇒ YES ⇒ ☐



SMS Server Settings

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Connection Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **SMS Center Selection** ⇒ 

Change SMS Center Address	⇒ 819066519300 ⇒  ⇒ Enter SMS Center address ⇒  ⇒ International or Unknown ⇒  • Address is 819066519300 by default. SMS may become unavailable if Center address is changed.
Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address	⇒ Reset ⇒  ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒  ⇒ YES ⇒ 



Internet

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai Press and hold ⇒ **Browser Settings** ⇒

Start Here for PC Site Browser Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ⇒ **PC Site Brw. Settings** ⇒

Set Scroll Unit/Speed	⇒ Scroll ⇒ ⇒ Whole Page, Half Page or Single Line ⇒
Set Whether to Show Images or Play Melodies	⇒ Downloads ⇒ ⇒ Display Images or Play Sounds ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Clear Cache	⇒ Memory Manager ⇒ ⇒ Delete Cache ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒
Delete Cookies	⇒ Memory Manager ⇒ ⇒ Delete Cookies ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒
Initialize Memory Status of Internet	⇒ Initialized Browser ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒
Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number	⇒ Security ⇒ ⇒ Manufacture Number ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Set Whether to Send Referer	⇒ Security ⇒ ⇒ Send Referer ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Enable/Disable Cookies	⇒ Security ⇒ ⇒ Cookie Settings ⇒ ⇒ Select an option ⇒
Set Whether to Activate Scripts	⇒ Security ⇒ ⇒ Script Settings ⇒ ⇒ Select an option ⇒
Check Internet Settings	⇒ Check Settings or Check PC Site Brw. Set ⇒
Reset Internet Settings	⇒ Reset or Reset PC Site Brw. Set ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒



Yahoo! Keitai

Start Here Press and hold ⇒ **Browser Settings** ⇒

Set Font Size	⇒ Font Size ⇒ ⇒ Select a size ⇒
Set Flash® Sound On/Off	⇒ Flash Sound Effect ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒

PC Site Browser

Start Here Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ⇒ **PC Site Brw. Settings** ⇒

Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers	⇒ Warning Messages ⇒ ⇒ OFF ⇒
Set Page Layout	⇒ Display Mode Settings ⇒ ⇒ PC Screen or Small Screen ⇒ ⇒ Select a size ⇒

Network Connection Settings

Set Whether to Send Location Information	⇒ Settings ⇒ ⇒ Send Location Info ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ Confirm, Send or Not Send ⇒ • Set to <i>Confirm</i> or <i>Send</i> to obtain information.
--	--



Channel List

Start Here  ⇒ TV ⇒  ⇒ **Channel List** ⇒ 

Change Title of Channel List	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒  ⇒ Edit Title ⇒  ⇒ Edit title ⇒ 
Delete a Channel List	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒  ⇒ Delete This ⇒  ⇒ YES ⇒  • The currently used channel list cannot be deleted.
Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒  ⇒  ⇒ Remote Control No. ⇒  ⇒ Select a remote control number ⇒  ⇒ Select a channel ⇒  ⇒ Repeat the same step ⇒  ⇒ YES ⇒ 
Delete a Channel	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒  ⇒ Select a channel ⇒  ⇒ Delete This ⇒  ⇒ YES ⇒ 



Image & Sound

Start Here  ⇒ **TV** ⇒  ⇒ **User Settings** ⇒ 

Set Subtitle Display	⇒ Subtitles ⇒  ⇒ ON (Wide: Bottom), ON (Wide: Top) or OFF ⇒ 
Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View	⇒ Icon Always Show ⇒  ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒  • Icons other than for program title no longer displayed if set to OFF .
Save Battery by Dimming Backlight	⇒ TV Power Saving ⇒  ⇒ YES ⇒ 
Keep Backlight Lighted While Watching TV	⇒ Display Light ⇒  ⇒ Constant Light ⇒ 
Set Time Backlight Stays Lit While Watching TV	⇒ Display Light ⇒  ⇒ Lighting Duration ⇒  ⇒ Enter lighting time ⇒ 
Set Sound Effect	⇒ TV Effect ⇒  ⇒ Sound Effect ⇒  ⇒ Select an effect ⇒ 
Set Visual Image Effect	⇒ TV Effect ⇒  ⇒ Visual Image Effect ⇒  ⇒ Select an effect ⇒ 
Set TV to Pause or Continue for Incoming Calls (Time Shift Playback)	⇒ Time Shift Setup ⇒  ⇒ Auto ON or Auto OFF ⇒ 



Data Broadcasts

Start Here ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **User Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Data BC Settings** ⇒

Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts	⇒ Set Image Disp. ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts	⇒ Sound Effect ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Set Whether or Not to Show Confirmation Window Again	⇒ Reset Disp. Set. ⇒ ⇒ YES or NO ⇒ • Once you select YES (By default) in a confirmation window for accessing a web page from Data Broadcast, the window no longer appears. Use this procedure to set the window to reappear.

Recording Programs

Continue/End Recording at Low Battery	⇒ TV ⇒ ⇒ User Settings ⇒ ⇒ Rec. While Low Battery ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
---------------------------------------	---



Other Settings

Start Here



TV



User Settings



Check TV Settings	⇒ Check TV Settings ⇒
Reset Channel Settings	⇒ Reset Channel Setting ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒
Clear Data Broadcast Memory	⇒ Reset Storage Area ⇒ ⇒ Select an affiliated station ⇒ ⇒ Delete This or Delete All ⇒ (⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒) ⇒ YES ⇒
Rest TV Settings	⇒ Reset TV Settings ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒



Camera/Video Settings

Set Image Quality	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) ⇨  ⇨ Quality Setting ⇨  ⇨ Select a quality ⇨ 
Set File Size	[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) ⇨  ⇨ Select a file size ⇨ 
Set White Balance	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) ⇨  ⇨ Select an item ⇨  In Photo Viewfinder, you need to set Photo Mode (P. 7-13) to OFF before setting white balance.
Reduce Flicker	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) ⇨  ⇨ Camera Settings ⇨  ⇨ Flicker ⇨  ⇨ Auto, Mode 1 (50Hz) or Mode 2 (60Hz) ⇨ 
Set Shutter Sound	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) ⇨  ⇨ Shutter Sound ⇨  ⇨ Select a shutter sound ⇨ 
Set Display for Handset Closed Shooting	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) ⇨  ⇨ Icon Always Show ⇨  ⇨ ON or OFF ⇨  - Below icons do not appear if set to OFF. ● Photo Viewfinder Focus Frame, Auto Timer, Number of Files That Can Be Saved ● Video Viewfinder Auto Timer, Storage Capacity, Recording Status, Recording Time (remaining)
Set Interval for Continuous Shooting	[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) ⇨  ⇨ Interval/Number ⇨  ⇨ Shot Interval ⇨  ⇨ 0.5 Seconds, 1.0 Seconds or 2.0 Seconds ⇨ 



Set Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting

[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) → → **Interval/Number** → → **Shot Number** → → Enter Shot Number →

File Storage & Continuous Shooting

Set Storage Location for Shot Still Images/Videos

[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) → → **Select to Save** → → **Phone** or **microSD** → → Select a folder →

- To save videos on memory card, select a folder of Inbox.

Save Shot Still Images/Videos Automatically

[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) → → **Auto save Set** → → **ON** →

- Still images and videos shot with handset camera are saved to the folders specified in *Select to Save*.



Playback Window

Change Playback Window Mode	[Video Player Playback] window (P. 9-5) ⇒ ⇒ Action Setting ⇒ ⇒ Screen Setting ⇒ ⇒ Normal Screen Mode or Full Screen Mode ⇒
Change Design of Playback Window	[Music Player Playback] window (P. 9-5) ⇒ ⇒ Action Setting ⇒ ⇒ Change Skin ⇒ ⇒ Select a design ⇒
Set Image Display Size	[Video Player Playback] window (P. 9-5) ⇒ ⇒ Action Setting ⇒ ⇒ Set Image Disp. ⇒ ⇒ Normal or Fit in Display ⇒

When Running S! Appli

Start Here ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **Settings** ⇒

Set Sound Volume	⇒ Sound/Vib Settings ⇒ ⇒ Volume ⇒ ⇒ to adjust volume ⇒
Set Vibration	⇒ Sound/Vib Settings ⇒ ⇒ Vibration ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Set Backlight	⇒ Backlight Settings ⇒ ⇒ Switch ON/OFF ⇒ ⇒ Always ON , Always OFF or Link To Phone Set. ⇒
Set Blinking of Backlight	⇒ Backlight Settings ⇒ ⇒ Blink ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒

Start Here ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Appli List** ⇒

Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network	⇒ Select an S! Appli ⇒ ⇒ Security Settings ⇒ ⇒ Net Access ⇒ ⇒ All Permit , Prompt at 1st only , Prompt each time or Disable ⇒
---	--



Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information	⇒ Select an S! Appli ⇒ ⇒ Security Settings ⇒ ⇒ Write User Data ⇒ ⇒ All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time or Disable ⇒
Reset Security Settings of S! Appli	⇒ Select an S! Appli ⇒ ⇒ Security Settings ⇒ ⇒ Reset Security Set. ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒

S! Appli Settings

Start Here ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **Settings** ⇒

Reset S! Appli Settings	⇒ Reset ⇒ ⇒ Set to Default ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒
Delete All S! Appli	⇒ Reset ⇒ ⇒ Delete All S! App ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒



Mobile Widget Settings

Start Here  ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒  ⇒ **Mobile Widget** ⇒  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ 

Set Whether to Use Mobile Widget	⇒ <i>Standby Disp. Set.</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ 
Check Auto Synchronize Settings	⇒ <i>Auto Refresh</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ 
Set Whether to Automatically Transmit When Abroad	⇒ <i>Auto Roaming</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ 
Delete All Widgets from Desktop Page	⇒ <i>Delete Content</i> ⇒  ⇒ Select a Desktop page ⇒  ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒  • All Widgets in selected Desktop page are deleted.
Set Whether to Use Cookies	⇒ <i>Cookies</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ 
Delete Cookies	⇒ <i>Delete Cookies</i> ⇒  ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ 



S! Quick News

Start Here ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Quick News** ⇒ ⇒ **Settings** ⇒

Hide S! Quick News in Standby	⇒ Standby Settings ⇒ ⇒ Standby Disp. Set. ⇒ ⇒ OFF ⇒ (twice)
Set Ticker Speed	⇒ Standby Settings ⇒ ⇒ Speed Settings ⇒ ⇒ Fast, Normal or Slow ⇒ (twice)
Set Information to appear in S! Quick News	⇒ Standby Settings ⇒ ⇒ Unread & Read Set. ⇒ ⇒ Unread Only or Unread & Read ⇒ (twice)
Hide S! Quick News Images	⇒ Set Image Disp. ⇒ ⇒ OFF ⇒ (twice)
Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents	⇒ Del. Quick News ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ (twice) ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ (twice)



S! Info Channel

Start Here  ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒  ⇒ **S! Info Ch./Weather** ⇒  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ 

Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information	⇒ S! Information Notif. ⇒  ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ 
--	---

Set Font Size for Web Pages	⇒ Font Size ⇒  ⇒ Select font size ⇒ 
-----------------------------	---

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Display** ⇒  ⇒ **Font** ⇒ 

Set Font Size	⇒ Character Size ⇒  ⇒ Separate Setting ⇒  ⇒ S! Info Ch. ⇒  ⇒ Select font size ⇒ 
---------------	---

Weather Indicators

Start Here  ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒  ⇒ **S! Info Ch./Weather** ⇒  ⇒ **Weather Indicator** ⇒  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ 

Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information	⇒ Weather Update ⇒  ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒  (⇒ YES ⇒ )
---	--

Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby	⇒ Standby Setting ⇒  ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ 
--	---

Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information	⇒ Weather Notif. ⇒  ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ 
--	--



Other Settings

Text Entry

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Character Input Set** ⇒

Set Text Input Method	⇒ Input Mode ⇒ ⇒ Select an input method ⇒
Set Word Prediction	⇒ Prediction ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana	⇒ T9 Change Mode ⇒ ⇒ T9 Kanji Change Mode or T9 Kana Change Mode ⇒
Clear Learning History	⇒ Clear Learned ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ T9/Expect Words/Pic. or Kana/Kanji Change/Face ⇒
Change Font Size	⇒ CHG Input Size ⇒ ⇒ Select a size ⇒
Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode	⇒ Auto Cursor ⇒ ⇒ Fast, Normal, Slow or OFF ⇒

Key/Touch Sensor

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Key/Touch Sensor** ⇒

Set Key/Touch Sensor Sound Off	⇒ Keypad Sound ⇒ ⇒ OFF ⇒
Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key	⇒ Shortcut-key Setting ⇒ ⇒ Select a function ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ - Alternatively, press and hold in Standby to set Shortcut-key Setting. - To return to original settings, press , select Reset Shortcut-Key, and press .



Other Settings

Set Touch Sensor Backlight	⇒ <i>Touch Sensor Setting</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Backlight</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ☐
Set Vibrator and Illumination for Touch Sensor Operation	⇒ <i>Touch Sensor Setting</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Touch Sensor Linkage</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Vibrator or Illumination</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>ON or OFF</i> ⇒ ☐
Set Touch Sensor Scroll	⇒ <i>Touch Sensor Setting</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Scroll</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>ON or OFF</i> ⇒ ☐ • Touch Sensor scrolling will be available for web pages and Message Details window when set to <i>ON</i>.
Set Not to Use Touch Sensor	⇒ <i>Touch Sensor Setting</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ☐

Key Illumination

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ☐ ⇒ *Illumination* ⇒ ☐ ⇒ *Key Illumination* ⇒ ☐ ⇒ *ON* ⇒ ☐

Set Illumination for Power On/Off	⇒ <i>Power ON or OFF</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Pattern</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>ON or OFF</i> ⇒ ☐
Set Flashing Color for Power On/Off	⇒ <i>Power ON or OFF</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Color</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ☐
Set Flashing Pattern for Call Start	⇒ <i>Talking Start</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Pattern</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ☐
Set Flashing Color for Call Start	⇒ <i>Talking Start</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Color</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ☐
Set Illumination for Emotion-Expressing Mail	⇒ <i>Emotion</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Always, Unread Mail Only or OFF</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Scroll</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>ON or OFF</i> ⇒ ☐
Set Flashing Pattern for Alarm Notification	⇒ <i>Alarm</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Pattern</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ☐



Other Settings

Set Flashing Color for Alarm Notification	⇒ <i>Alarm</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Color</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ☐
Set Illumination for Snooze Notification	⇒ <i>Snooze</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Pattern</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ☐
Set Flashing Color for Snooze Notification	⇒ <i>Snooze</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Color</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ☐
Set Illumination for Ir/IC Transmission	⇒ <i>Ir Exchanging</i> or <i>IC Exchanging</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Pattern</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ☐
Set Flashing Color for Ir/IC Transmission	⇒ <i>Ir Exchanging</i> or <i>IC Exchanging</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Color</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ☐
Illuminate When Charging Begins	⇒ <i>Charge Starting</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Pattern</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ☐
Set Flashing Color (When Charging Begins)	⇒ <i>Charge Starting</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Color</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ☐
Set Flashing Pattern for Handset Open or Close	⇒ <i>Open</i> or <i>Close</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Pattern</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ☐
Set Flashing Color for Handset Open or Close	⇒ <i>Open</i> or <i>Close</i> ⇒ ☐ ⇒ <i>Set Color</i> ⇒ ☐ (⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ☐) ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ☐



Key Backlight

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Illumination** ⇒

Set Key Backlight Color	⇒ Key Backlight ⇒ ⇒ Select a color ⇒
Set Key Backlight Off	⇒ Key Backlight ⇒ ⇒ OFF ⇒

Osaifu-Keitai®

Set illumination for IC Card	⇒ Tools ⇒ ⇒ Osaifu-Keitai ⇒ ⇒ IC Card Illumination ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Delete all Lifestyle-Appli	⇒ S! Appli ⇒ ⇒ Settings ⇒ ⇒ Reset ⇒ ⇒ Delete All LifeApp ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒
Set Whether to Enable Opening from Browser	⇒ Tools ⇒ ⇒ Osaifu-Keitai ⇒ ⇒ Interface Settings ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ Browser ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒



Bluetooth®

Start Here ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Bluetooth** ⇒ ⇒ **Bluetooth Settings** ⇒

Set Detection Time for Device	⇒ Time-out to Search ⇒ ⇒ Enter search time ⇒
Set Whether to Send Ring Tone for Voice Call, Video Call to Headset or Handsfree Device	⇒ Forward Ring Tone ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ Ring tone will also sound from handset if <i>Headset Usage Setting</i> is set to <i>Headset+speaker</i> and <i>Forward Ring Tone</i> is set to <i>OFF</i>.
Set Whether to Enable Calling from External Device	⇒ Dial From Other Device ⇒ ⇒ Valid or Invalid ⇒
Check Handset Bluetooth® Information	⇒ Bluetooth Info ⇒ Press to change name of added device.

Resetting Handset

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒

Reset All Settings to Default	⇒ Reset Settings ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒
Initialize Handset to Default Status	⇒ Initialize ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ - When the initialization is completed, handset automatically shuts down and restarts. - When handset is initialized, all data downloaded and saved on handset are deleted and cannot be restored. - Your Security Code will also be reset to default.

Appendix



Multitask Combinations.....	15-2
Software Update	15-4
Updating Software	15-4
Troubleshooting	15-6
Text Entry Key Assignments.....	15-10
In 5-touch Mode.....	15-10
In 2-touch Mode.....	15-11
In T9 Input Mode	15-12
Kuten Code List	15-13
Menu List	15-19
Specifications	15-34
Main Specifications	15-34
Handset Materials	15-35
Maximum Number of Storable Items ..	15-36
Memory Card Folders & Files.....	15-37
Index.....	15-39
Warranty & After Sales Service	15-51
Warranty.....	15-51
After Sales Service	15-51
Customer Service	15-52

15



Multitask Combinations

Function Currently Active Function	Mail	Yahoo! Keitai menu	S! Appli	Settings	Data Folder	Tools	Optional Services	Phone Book	Own Data	Music	TV	Camera	Original Menu
Mail Group Function	○ ²	○	○	○ ⁶	○	○ ⁸	○	○ ¹³	○	○	○	○	○
Yahoo! Keitai Group Function	○	×	○	○ ⁶	○	○ ⁸	○	○ ¹³	○	○	○	○	○
S! Appli Group Function	○	○	×	○ ⁶	○	○ ⁸	○	○ ¹³	○	○	○	○	○
Settings Group Function	○	○	○	×	○	○ ⁸	×	○ ¹³	○	○	○	○	○
Tools Group Function ¹	○	○	○	○ ⁶	×	×	○	×	×	○ ⁶	○ ⁶	×	○
TV & Music Group Function	○ ³	○ ⁴	○ ⁵	○ ⁶	○ ⁴	○ ⁶	○	○ ¹³	○	×	×	○ ¹⁶	○
During a Voice Call	○	○	×	×	×	○ ⁹	○ ^{11 12}	○ ¹³	○ ¹⁴	×	×	×	○
During a Video Call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During Packet Transmission with a PC Connected	○	○	○	○ ⁶	○	○ ⁸	○	○ ¹³	○	×	×	○	○

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated.

1 Except **Receive Ir Data** and **USIM Operation** which cannot be activated with another function.

2 **Compose Message** and **Compose SMS** cannot be activated at the same time.

3 Audio functions such as those for reading out messages and playing mail-attached melodies cannot be activated at the same time as **Music Player**.



Multitask Combinations

- 4 Audio functions such as those for playing melodies and videos cannot be activated at the same time as *Music Player*. *TV* is temporarily paused.
- 5 S! Appli cannot be activated when *Music Player* is playing. *TV* is temporarily paused.
- 6 Cannot be activated depending on the function.
- 7 Only *Pause Dial*, *IC Card Lock Set.*, *Keypad Sound* and *Network Status* are available.
- 8 *Receive Ir Data*, *microSD Manager*, *Voice Announce* and *USIM Operation* are unavailable.
- 9 Only the following functions are available: *Schedule*, *Calculator*, *Dictionary*, *Text Memo*, *To Do List*, *IC Card Lock Set.*, *S! Addressbook Back-up*, *Account Details*, *Bluetooth* and voice memo during a call.
- 10 Voice memo during a call is available only when you press and hold .
- 11 Playing messages at Voice Mail Center is impossible.
- 12 *Caller ID Notification* is unavailable.
- 13 *Restrictions* is unavailable.
- 14 *Common Phrases*, *Own Dictionary* and *DL Dictionary* are unavailable.
- 15 Only *Booking Program List*, *Timer Recording List* and *Program Guide (only during packet transmission)* are available.
- 16 Camera cannot be activated when *Music Player* is playing.



Software Update

Check if software on handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network if necessary.

- Before updating software, turn off handset and restart it to make sure that all handset functions have ended.
- Disconnect the USB cable from handset. The software update, if it is done with the USB cable connected, may not be properly completed.
- No transmission fees apply to check or update software.
- Updating software may take 30 minutes or so. Wait for the software update to finish before using handset.
- Make sure battery is sufficiently charged before updating software.
- Update software in a location of good signal reception. Do not change locations while updating software.
- Never remove battery or USIM Card or turn off handset while updating software.
- Other handset functions are available once the software update is completed.

- Data saved on handset is retained when you update software. However, data may be lost depending on the handset condition (e.g. a malfunction). We recommend that you make backups of important data (though it may be impossible to back up some downloaded data) before updating software. SoftBank is not liable for any data loss.
- If software update fails, handset may become inoperable. If this happens, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-52).

Updating Software

- 1** **⇒ Settings** **⇒ Other Settings** **⇒ Software Update**
- 2** **Software Update**

Software Update
We recommend that you stay in a place with a good reception while executing Software Update. Sending/receiving call/mail is not available during update. Continue?

3 Follow onscreen instructions

● After Software is Updated

After an update completion message appears, handset restarts automatically, and update results appear.



Software Updated Window

Checking Update Results

- 1** **⇒ Settings** **⇒ Other Settings** **⇒ Software Update**
- 2** **Update Result**



Using Regular Updates

A confirmation for software update appears at the scheduled time. Press ☐ or leave handset for a while to start automatic software update.

- If other functions are being used at the scheduled time, software update cannot start. End all functions to open the software update confirmation window (if you keep using other functions for more than ten minutes after a scheduled time, software update is canceled).



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot turn on handset.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-14
	Is battery exhausted?	P. 1-22
It takes a long time to turn on handset.	It takes time if there are large amounts of data (e.g., Phone Book entries) saved on handset.	-
Cannot charge battery. Charging Indicator does not light up.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-14
	Is the charger (sold separately) plugged into an outlet properly?	P. 1-17
	Is the connector of AC Charger correctly inserted into handset?	
Battery drains too fast.	Has the battery reached the end of its service life? The battery life may shorten depending on the usage environment.	P. 1-14
	The battery operation time fluctuates according to how you use handset.	
Cannot make calls.	Is handset out of service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Is a maximum call cost limit set?	P. 14-19

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot make calls using Keypad.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is Dial/Sending Mail specified to be locked in Original (Dial) Lock mode?	P. 4-3
	Is Restrict Dialing set?	P. 2-26
A message is heard saying that the number you have reached is not in service.	Did you include the area code when dialing a phone number?	-
Only a busy tone is heard after dialing a phone number.	Does Network is busy at this moment Please try again later appear in Display?	-
Cannot receive calls. The incoming ringtone does not sound.	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-20
	Is handset in Emission OFF Mode ?	P. 4-7
	Is Ring Volume set to Silent ?	P. 14-10



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during calls.	Is the earpiece properly placed against your ear?	-
	Is anything obstructing the speaker if it is in handsfree mode?	-
	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8
The other party's voice is too loud during calls.	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8
Handset is slow to react when keys are pressed.	This may occur when there are large amounts of data saved on handset, or when large amounts of data are being transferred between handset and memory card.	-
Cannot hear key operation tones.	Is Keypad Sound set to OFF ?	P. 14-38
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-20
Side Key is inoperable when handset is closed.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Nothing appears in Display.	Is Power Saver Mode activated?	P. 14-7
	If handset is left in a very hot place, it may automatically shut down. If this happens, move handset to a location at an appropriate temperature (5 to 35°C) and wait for a while until the keys become operable again.	-
Display is hard to see.	Is Brightness under Backlight set to Dark ?	P. 14-7
	Is ECO Mode set to ON ?	P. 1-23
	Is Privacy Angle set to ON ?	P. 14-6
Display backlight does not light.	Is Lighting under Backlight set to OFF ?	P. 14-7
A message appears instead of an image, video or song.	The image, video or song is unavailable with the function being used when any of the following messages appear. Not available , Expiredfile and No preview data	-
 appears instead of an image or preview.	The image file may be corrupted.	-



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
The Flash® clock appearing in Standby is stopped.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
Images shot with handset camera flicker.	When shooting images indoors, flicker may occur due to fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the Flicker setting may help reduce flicker.	P. 14-31
Still images or videos shot with handset camera are too bright.	Were the still images or videos shot with Flicker not set to Auto ? Set Flicker to Auto .	P. 14-31
Still images or videos shot with handset camera are blurred.	Select a Photo Mode suited to the subject or scene.	P. 7-13
Cannot watch TV.	Is handset out of the digital terrestrial broadcast service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Are the channel settings done?	P. 8-5
Insert USIM appears.	USIM Card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 1-12

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Insert microSD appears.	Memory card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 12-11
Replace with a new one or check the disk appears.	Perform a scan disk on memory card.	P. 12-18
Network is busy at this moment Please try again later appears.	This may be due to errors or heavy traffic on the voice call lines or packet transmission network. Try again after a while. Emergency calls to 110, 119 and 118 are still possible.	-
Function cannot operate any more appears.	End one of the currently active functions to continue operation.	-
Other function active Cannot start appears.	These messages appear when you try to use an unavailable function when another function is active.	-
Other function active Cannot operate appears.		



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Memory shortage appears.	This message appears when operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. Reboot handset.	-
Connection failed appears.	Network connection is interrupted due to weak signal.	-
	The page you are trying to access is very busy. Try again after a while.	-
 (microSD card indicator marked with ?) appears.	The indicator appears when a defective memory card is inserted.	P. 12-18
Osaifu-Keitai® cannot be used.	Has the battery run out?	P. 1-22
	Has IC Card Lock or Call Remote Lock been set?	P. 11-4



In 5-touch Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode	Number Entry Mode
[1]	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ 1	. / @ - : ~ ^ _ 1	1
[2]	かきくけこ	カキクケコ 2	abcABC 2	2
[3]	さしすせそ	サシスセソ 3	defDEF 3	3
[4]	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ 4	ghiGHI 4	4
[5]	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ 5	jklJKL 5	5
[6]	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ 6	mnoMNO 6	6
[7]	まみむめも	マミムメモ 7	pqrPQRS 7	7
[8]	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ 8	tuvTUV 8	8
[9]	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ 9	wxyzWXYZ 9	9
[0]	わをんわー	ワヲンワ ² ー 0	0	0 + ³
[*]	。 。 4 5 6	。 。 4 5 6	_____ 4 5	*
[#]	、 。 ? ! ・ Space ⁷	、 。 ? ! ・ Space ⁷	, . ? ! ' - & () ¥ Space	#

- 1 Appears as “~” during double-byte entry.
- 2 The lower case of “ワ” can be entered in double-byte mode.
- 3 Press and hold [*] to enter “+.”
- 4 Can be toggled between upper case and lower case.
- 5 [*] to insert line feed “↓.”
- 6 Before confirming characters, press [] to display “.” and press again in this state to enter “” or “°.”
- 7 “、” “。” “?” “!” “ ” and “・” cannot be entered when entering readings in Own Dictionary or in USIM Phone Book.



In 2-touch Mode

● In Double-byte Mode

Key	Press Next										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
Press First	1	あ あ	い い	う う	え え	お お	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	か 	き 	く 	け 	こ 	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	さ 	し 	す 	せ 	そ 	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	た 	ち 	つ っ	て 	と 	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	な 	に 	ぬ 	ね 	の 	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	は 	ひ 	ふ 	へ 	ほ 	Z z	? 	! 	— 	/
	7	ま 	み 	む 	め 	も 	¥ 	& 		 ¹	
	8	や や	(	ゆ ゆ	) 	よ よ	* 	# 		 ¹	²
	9	ら 	り 	る 	れ 	ろ 	1 	2 	3 	4 	5
	0	わ わ	を 	ん 	³ 、	³ 。	6 	7 	8 	9 	0

● In Single-byte Mode

Key		Press Next									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
Press First	1	ア ア	イ イ	ウ ウ	エ エ	オ オ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	カ カ	キ キ	ク ク	ケ ケ	コ コ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	サ サ	シ シ	ス ス	セ セ	ソ ソ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	タ タ	チ チ	ツ ツ	テ テ	ト ト	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	ナ ナ	ニ ニ	ヌ ヌ	ネ ネ	ノ ノ	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	ハ ハ	ヒ ヒ	フ フ	ヘ ヘ	ホ ホ	Z z	? 	! 	- 	/
	7	マ マ	ミ ミ	ム ム	メ メ	モ モ	\ 	& 			¹
	8	ヤ ヤ	(	ユ ユ	) 	ヨ ヨ	* 	# 			¹ 2
	9	ラ @	リ /	ル -	レ _	ロ :	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @softbank.ne.jp	5
	0	ワ ~	ヲ ,	ン ,	” ,	” .	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

• Katakana are entered in double-byte mode when entering readings in USIM Phone Book.

- 1 Can be entered as double-byte characters when entering pictographs is possible, such as in Text Memo and Common Phrases.
- 2 Press to toggle between upper-case and lower-case modes. Pressing after entering an upper case character switches to the lower case character.
- 3 After characters that cannot have “ ” or “ ”, a separate “ ” or “ ” is entered. Before confirming characters, press to display “_,” and press again in this state to enter “ ” or “ ”.

: A space is entered for these key combinations.



In T9 Input Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode
1	Row あ, 1	Row ア, 1	. / @ ? ! () , - _ : ' ~ ^ & ¥ 1 Single-byte space
2	Row か, 2	Row カ, 2	abcABC2
3	Row ざ, 3	Row サ, 3	defDEF3
4	Row た, 4	Row タ, 4	ghiGHI4
5	Row な, 5	Row ナ, 5	jkIJKL5
6	Row は, 6	Row ハ, 6	mnoMNO6
7	Row ま, 7	Row マ, 7	pqrPQRS7
8	Row や, 8	Row ヤ, 8	tuvTUV8
9	Row ら, 9	Row ラ, 9	wxyzWXYZ9
0	わをん わー, 0	ワヨン ワ ⁴ ー, 0	0
*	1 2	1 2	2 6
#	3	3	

- For key assignments in number entry mode, see the table in "In 5-touch Mode."
 - Numbers do not appear when entering readings in USIM Phone Book and Own Dictionary.
 - Press **[*]** to toggle the case as follows:
Caps-lock cancel mode → Shift mode → Caps Lock mode
 - Caps Lock mode: All characters are entered in upper case.
Shift mode: The first characters of words are capitalized and the rest of characters are entered in lower case.
Caps-lock cancel mode: All characters are entered in lower case.
 - Once characters entered in Shift mode have been determined, the mode is switched to Caps-lock cancel mode.
- When editing a reading, pressing **[*]** adds/cancels "" or ""."
 - [*]** to insert line feed "↓."
 - “, ”, “”, “?”, “”, “!”, “”, “.” and “(space)” appear right after a reading or character is determined.
 - The lower case of “ワ” can only be entered in double-byte mode.
 - “ー” is entered in double-byte mode.
 - Pressing before confirming characters enters a space before confirming.



Kuten Code List

●Actual Display font may differ in appearance from the following.

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																
010	!	!	!	!	!	!	!	!	!	?	037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ	139	∴	∩	U																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							

[illegible]



Kuten Code List

1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	
323 誠	0 西	359 丁	0 兆	390 如	0 如	422 弊	0 平
324 貳	1 脆	360 兆	1 帖	391 菲	1 菲	423 壁	1 壁
325 績	2 績	361 帖	2 帖	392 任	2 任	424 編	2 編
326 撰	3 撰	362 朝	3 朝	393 妊	3 妊	425 邊	3 邊
327 拱	4 拱	363 朝	4 朝	394 忍	4 忍	426 篇	4 篇
328 撰	5 撰	364 諜	5 諜	395 怒	5 怒	427 平	5 平
329 撰	6 撰	365 諜	6 諜	396 忍	6 忍	428 壁	6 壁
330 撰	7 撰	366 諜	7 諜	397 忍	7 忍	429 篇	7 篇
331 撰	8 撰	367 諜	8 諜	398 忍	8 忍	430 篇	8 篇
332 撰	9 撰	368 諜	9 諜	399 忍	9 忍	431 篇	9 篇
333 誠	0 誠	369 諜	0 諜	400 忍	0 忍	432 篇	0 篇
334 貳	1 貳	370 諜	1 諜	401 忍	1 忍	433 篇	1 篇
335 績	2 績	371 諜	2 諜	402 忍	2 忍	434 篇	2 篇
336 撰	3 撰	372 諜	3 諜	403 忍	3 忍	435 篇	3 篇
337 拱	4 拱	373 諜	4 諜	404 忍	4 忍	436 篇	4 篇
338 撰	5 撰	374 諜	5 諜	405 忍	5 忍	437 篇	5 篇
339 撰	6 撰	375 諜	6 諜	406 忍	6 忍	438 篇	6 篇
340 撰	7 撰	376 諜	7 諜	407 忍	7 忍	439 篇	7 篇
341 撰	8 撰	377 諜	8 諜	408 忍	8 忍	440 篇	8 篇
342 撰	9 撰	378 諜	9 諜	409 忍	9 忍	441 篇	9 篇
343 誠	0 誠	379 諜	0 諜	410 忍	0 忍	442 篇	0 篇
344 貳	1 貳	380 諜	1 諜	411 忍	1 忍	443 篇	1 篇
345 績	2 績	381 諜	2 諜	412 忍	2 忍	444 篇	2 篇
346 撰	3 撰	382 諜	3 諜	413 忍	3 忍	445 篇	3 篇
347 拱	4 拱	383 諜	4 諜	414 忍	4 忍	446 篇	4 篇
348 撰	5 撰	384 諜	5 諜	415 忍	5 忍	447 篇	5 篇
349 撰	6 撰	385 諜	6 諜	416 忍	6 忍	448 篇	6 篇
350 撰	7 撰	386 諜	7 諜	417 忍	7 忍	449 篇	7 篇
351 撰	8 撰	387 諜	8 諜	418 忍	8 忍	450 篇	8 篇
352 撰	9 撰	388 諜	9 諜	419 忍	9 忍	451 篇	9 篇
353 誠	0 誠	389 諜	0 諜	420 忍	0 忍	452 篇	0 篇
354 貳	1 貳	390 諜	1 諜	421 忍	1 忍	453 篇	1 篇
355 績	2 績	391 諜	2 諜	422 忍	2 忍	454 篇	2 篇
356 撰	3 撰	392 諜	3 諜	423 忍	3 忍	455 篇	3 篇
357 拱	4 拱	393 諜	4 諜	424 忍	4 忍	456 篇	4 篇
358 撰	5 撰	394 諜	5 諜	425 忍	5 忍	457 篇	5 篇

[illegible]

1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	
599	樞	640	爲	681	筭	722	空	763	莫
600	樞	641	爲	682	筭	723	篋	764	莫
601	樞	642	爲	683	筭	724	篋	765	莫
602	樞	643	爲	684	筭	725	篋	766	莫
603	樞	644	爲	685	筭	726	篋	767	莫
604	樞	645	爲	686	筭	727	篋	768	莫
605	樞	646	爲	687	筭	728	篋	769	莫
606	樞	647	爲	688	筭	729	篋	770	莫
607	樞	648	爲	689	筭	730	篋	771	莫
608	樞	649	爲	690	筭	731	篋	772	莫
609	樞	650	爲	691	筭	732	篋	773	莫
610	樞	651	爲	692	筭	733	篋	774	莫
611	樞	652	爲	693	筭	734	篋	775	莫
612	樞	653	爲	694	筭	735	篋	776	莫
613	樞	654	爲	695	筭	736	篋	777	莫
614	樞	655	爲	696	筭	737	篋	778	莫
615	樞	656	爲	697	筭	738	篋	779	莫
616	樞	657	爲	698	筭	739	篋	780	莫
617	樞	658	爲	699	筭	740	篋	781	莫
618	樞	659	爲	700	筭	741	篋	782	莫
619	樞	660	爲	701	筭	742	篋	783	莫
620	樞	661	爲	702	筭	743	篋	784	莫
621	樞	662	爲	703	筭	744	篋	785	莫
622	樞	663	爲	704	筭	745	篋	786	莫
623	樞	664	爲	705	筭	746	篋	787	莫
624	樞	665	爲	706	筭	747	篋	788	莫
625	樞	666	爲	707	筭	748	篋	789	莫
626	樞	667	爲	708	筭	749	篋	790	莫
627	樞	668	爲	709	筭	750	篋	791	莫
628	樞	669	爲	710	筭	751	篋	792	莫
629	樞	670	爲	711	筭	752	篋	793	莫
630	樞	671	爲	712	筭	753	篋	794	莫
631	樞	672	爲	713	筭	754	篋	795	莫
632	樞	673	爲	714	筭	755	篋	796	莫
633	樞	674	爲	715	筭	756	篋	797	莫
634	樞	675	爲	716	筭	757	篋	798	莫
635	樞	676	爲	717	筭	758	篋	799	莫
636	樞	677	爲	718	筭	760	篋	800	莫
637	樞	678	爲	719	筭	761	篋	801	莫
638	樞	679	爲	720	筭	762	篋	802	莫
639	樞	680	爲	721	筭	763	篋	803	莫



15

[illegible]



Menu List

- Enter menu item numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu theme must be set to **Basic**.
- See “Check Default Style Mode Settings” (P. 14-3) for menu items whose default settings differ according to the model color.

● Mail

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Inbox	—	—	—	P. 5-7, P. 5-21
Outbox	—	—	—	P. 5-10, P. 5-24
Draft	—	—	—	P. 5-24
Tomomato-Mail BOX	—	—	—	P. 5-12
Compose Message	—	—	—	P. 5-3
Compose SMS	—	—	—	P. 5-5
Server Mail	Mail List	—	—	P. 5-8, P. 5-20
	Server Mail Memory	—	—	P. 5-21
Retrieve New	—	—	—	P. 5-20
Template	—	—	—	P. 5-19
Mail Setting	Custom Mail Address	—	—	P. 14-22
	Scroll	—	1 Line	P. 14-23
	Font Size		Standard	
	Mail List Disp.		1 Line+Body	
	Start Attachment (auto)		OFF	
	Header/Signature		—	P. 14-21, P. 14-23



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Mail Setting	Mail Box Lock	—	—	P. 5-13
	Receiving Setting		Operation Preferred	P. 14-22
	Read Out Setting		Select Voice: Female 1, Read Out Received Mail: ON	
	Emotion/Keyword		Disp. Emotion: ON, Disp. Keyword: OFF	
	S! Mail Settings		Message Download: Auto(All), Delivery Report: OFF	P. 14-21
	SMS Settings		SMS Report Request: OFF, SMS Validity Period: 3 Days, SMS Input Character: Japanese(70char.)	
	Check Settings		—	P. 14-23
	Reset		—	

●Yahoo! Keitai

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Bookmark	—	—	—	P. 6-11
Saved Pages	—	—	—	
History	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Enter URL	—	—	—	
PC Site Browser	—	—	See “●PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai” (P. 15-31).	P. 6-5
Browser Settings	Font Size	—	Standard	P. 14-26
	Scroll		Single Line	P. 14-25
	Downloads		Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON	
	Flash Sound Effect		ON	P. 14-26
	Memory Manager		—	P. 14-25



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Browser Settings	Security		Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: Ask NW Access	P. 14-25
	Check Settings		—	
	Initialized Browser	—	—	
	Reset		—	

●S! Appli

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Appli List	—	—	—	P. 9-8, P. 9-9, P. 9-13
Settings	Sound/Vib Settings	—	Volume: Level 4, Vibration: ON	P. 14-33
	Backlight Settings		Switch ON/OFF: Link To Phone Set., Blink: ON	
	Reset		—	P. 14-34
Information	—	—	—	P. 9-8

●TV

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Watch TV	—	—	—	P. 8-6, P. 8-14
Program Guide	—	—	—	P. 8-9
Booking Program List	—	—	—	P. 8-12
Timer Recording List	—	—	—	
Result Timer Rec	—	—	—	P. 8-18
TV Link	—	—	—	P. 8-15



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Channel List	—	—	—	P. 8-14
Channel Settings	—	—	—	P. 8-5
User Settings	Subtitles	—	ON (Wide: Bottom)	P. 14-28
	Rec. While Low Battery		ON	P. 14-29
	TV Effect		Sound Effect: Auto, Visual Image Effect: Dynamic	P. 14-28
	TV Power Saving		OFF (not set)	
	Display Light		Constant Light	
	Data BC Settings		Set Image Disp.: ON, Sound Effect: ON	P. 14-29
	Icon Always Show		ON	P. 14-28
	Time Shift Setup		Auto ON	
	Check TV Settings		—	P. 14-30
	Reset Channel Setting		—	
	Reset Storage Area		—	
	Reset TV Settings		—	

● Camera

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Photo Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-5
Movie Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-7
Voice Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-8
Quick Album	—	—	—	P. 12-4
Videos	—	—	—	P. 7-14



Menu List

●Entertainment

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Mobile Widget	Widget Contents	—	—	P. 10-3
	Settings		Auto Refresh: ON, Auto Roaming: OFF, Cookies: ON	P. 14-35
	Information		—	P. 10-2
S! Quick News	S! Quick News List	—	—	P. 10-5
	Settings		See “●Settings for S! Quick News under Entertainment”(P. 15-32)	—
S! Info Ch./Weather	What's New	—	—	P. 10-6
	History		—	
	Register/Cancel		—	
	Get Latest Contents		—	P. 10-10
	Settings		S! Information Notif.: ON, Font Size: Standard	P. 14-37
	Weather Indicator		Weather Update: ON, Standby Setting: ON, Weather Notif.: ON	P. 10-6 P. 14-37
BookSurfing	—	—	—	P. 10-8

●Tools

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Alarm	—	44	—	P. 11-16
Schedule	—	45	—	P. 11-8
Calculator	—	85	—	P. 11-15
Dictionary	Enter Word	—	—	P. 2-31
	Text Reader	—	—	—
	Reference History	—	—	P. 2-31



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Text Memo	—	42	—	P. 11-13
To Do List	—	95	—	P. 11-11
Life History Viewer	—	—	—	P. 11-6
Osaifu-Keitai	—	—	—	P. 11-2
S! Addressbook Back-up	Start Sync	—	—	P. 2-28
	Auto Sync Settings	—	—	P. 14-16
	Sync Log	—	—	P. 2-28
Account Details	—	0	—	P. 1-22
Bar Code Reader	—	—	—	P. 11-18
Text Reader	—	—	—	P. 11-20
Receive Ir Data	—	79	—	P. 13-3
Bluetooth	—	—	—	P. 13-5
Play/Erase Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-5, P. 3-18
Play/Erase VC Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-5
Voice Memo	—	43	—	P. 11-14
Voice Announce	—	91	—	P. 14-15
Forwarding Image	—	—	ON	P. 14-16
microSD Manager	—	—	—	P. 12-12
USIM Operation	—	—	—	P. 2-27, P. 5-22



Menu List

●Data Folder

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
My Picture	—	46	—	P. 12-2
Melody	—	16	—	
S! Appli	—	—	—	
Ring Songs · Music	—	—	—	
Videos	—	—	—	
Books	—	—	—	
Widget	—	—	—	
TV	—	—	—	

●Music

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
—	—	—	—	P. 9-5

●Own Data

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Received Calls	—	24	—	P. 3-11
Dialed Calls	—	—	—	P. 3-10
Blog/Mail Member	—	97	—	P. 5-4
Tomo-Den	—	—	—	P. 3-12
Common Phrases	—	38	—	P. 2-17
Own Dictionary	—	82	—	P. 2-17
DL Dictionary	—	—	—	



●Phone Book

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
—	—	—	—	P. 2-21

●Settings

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Style Mode Setting	—	—	Differs according to the model color.	P. 14-3
Incoming Call	Ring Volume	50	Phone, Video Call, Mail: Level 4	P. 14-10
	Select Ring Tone	13	Phone (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 1, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Video Call (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 3, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Mail (Select Ring Tone: You've got mail 1, Select Receiving Disp.: Flying Type)	
	Vibrator	54	Phone, Video Call, Mail: OFF	
	Illumination	89	Set Color (Phone: Color 10, Video Call: Color 5, Mail: Color 1), Set Pattern: Standard, Missed Info: ON	P. 14-11
	Manner Mode Setting	20	Manner Mode	P. 14-13
	Disp. Phone Book Image	—	ON	P. 14-11
	Answer Setting	58	Any Key Answer	
	Mail Ring Time	68	Mail: ON (Ring Time: 05 Seconds)	P. 14-10
	Ring Time(sec.)	90	Set Mute Seconds: OFF, Missed Calls Display: Display	P. 4-7
	Answering Machine	55	OFF	P. 3-4
	Disp. Call/Receive No.	—	Solid Black, Berry Pink and Glitter Orange: White, Light Grey and Frost Green: Black	P. 14-14
Talk	Hyper Clear Voice	—	Low	P. 14-18
	Auto Voice Memo	—	OFF	
	Noise Reduction	76	ON	



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Talk	Quality Alarm	75	No Tone	P. 14-18
	Reconnect Signal	77	No Tone	
	Set Hold Tone	—	On Hold Tone: Tone 1	
Dialing	Pause Dial	84	—	P. 14-17
	Sub-address Setting	—	OFF	
	Prefix Setting	—	国際発信 (Prefix: 0046010)	
Dialing	Headset SW to Dial	—	OFF	P. 14-15
	Int'l Dial Assistance	—	Auto Int'l Call Set.: ON, Country Code Setting: 日本 (Country Code: 81), IDD Prefix Setting: 国際発信 (IDD Prefix Code: 0046010)	P. 14-17
Video Call	Visual Preference	—	Normal	P. 3-17
	Select Image		On Hold, Holding, Substitute Image, Answering Machine, Preparing, Voice Memo: Pre-installed	P. 14-19
	Auto Redial as Voice		OFF	
	Display Setting		Main Display: Other Side	
	Hands-free Switch		ON	
Display	Display Setting	56	Differs according to the model color.	P. 14-4
	Backlight	70	Lighting: ON+Saver (Light Time: 01 Minutes), Charging: Standard, Brightness: ON+Level 4	P. 14-7
	Display Design	86	Differs according to the model color.	P. 14-5
	Font	66	Font Type: Gothic, Thickness: Bold, Character Size: Standard	
	Desktop Icon	63	Theme 1	P. 14-7
	3D Display Setting	—	ON	P. 14-8
	言語選択 (Language)	15	日本語	P. 14-6



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Display	Original Menu	52	Account Details, Retrieve New, Ring Volume, Vibrator, Alarm, Change Security Code	P. 14-9
	Menu Display Set	57	Menu Display: List, Theme: Differs according to the model color, Memory Focus: ON	P. 14-8
	Viewer Settings	—	Picture	P. 14-6
	Icons	36	—	P. 1-7
	Icons Setting	—	ON	P. 14-10
	Privacy Angle	—	OFF	P. 14-6
	Image Display Mode	—	Vivid	
	Quick Info Setting	—	Display Sender	
	Display On Charge	—	Wide Stand-by Clock	
	Screen Effect	—	Turn	
Call Time/Charge	Call Data	61	—	P. 3-11
	Set Max Cost Limit	—	Notify Setting: OFF	P. 14-19
	Reset Total	60	—	P. 3-19
	Auto Reset Total Cost	—	OFF	P. 14-18
Clock	Set Main Time	31	Auto Time Adjust: Auto, Summer Time: OFF	P. 14-2
	Set Sub Clock	—	Display Method: OFF, Summer Time: OFF, Area Name: Display	
	Clock Display	39	Display: ON, Size: Small, Color: Differ according to the model color.	
	Alarm Setting	—	Alarm Preferred	P. 14-3
	Clock Alarm Tone Set	—	Alarm Tone	
	Auto Power ON	—	OFF	
	Auto Power OFF	—	OFF	



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Security	Lock	—	OFF	P. 4-3
	IC Card Lock Set.	—	OFF	P. 11-4
	Call Remote Lock	—	OFF	
	Keypad Lock	—	After Closed: OFF, Timer: OFF, Lock Key: ON, Security Code: NO	P. 4-4
	Emission OFF Mode	—	NO (not set)	P. 4-7
	Secret Mode	40	OFF (not set)	P. 4-8
	Secret Data Only Mode	41	OFF (not set)	
	Reject Unknown	—	Accept	P. 4-7
	Call Setting W/O ID	10	Unknown, Payphone, User Unset: Accept (Select Ring Tone: Same as Ring Tone, Select Calling Disp.: Same as Display)	
	Change Security Code	29	9999	
	IC Card Authentic.	—	OFF	P. 4-6
	PIN Setting	—	—	P. 4-2
Slide-style Setting	Setting When Open	—	Answer Incoming, Display New Mail, Display Missed Call: OFF	P. 14-11
	Slide Sound	—	Open Sound: Open-1 (Ring Time: 2.0 Seconds), Close Sound: Close-1 (Ring Time: 2.0 Seconds)	P. 14-14
Illumination	Key Illumination	—	See "●Key Illumination for Illumination under Settings" (P. 15-32)	—
	Key Backlight	—	Differ according to the model color.	P. 14-41
Key/Touch Sensor	Keypad Sound	—	ON	P. 14-38
	Touch Sensor Setting	—	ON	P. 14-39
	Shortcut-key Setting	—	Music Player	P. 14-38
External Connection	USB Mode Setting	—	Communication Mode	P. 13-9



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
External Connection	Headset Usage Setting	—	Headset+speaker	P. 14-15
	Headset Mic. Setting	—	Headset Microphone	
	Auto Answer Setting	—	Phone, Video Call: OFF	
Connection Settings	SMS Center Selection	—	819066519300	P. 14-24
	Certificate	—	All Certificates: Valid	P. 6-14
	Retrieve NW Info		—	P. 1-18
Send Location Info	—	—	Confirm	P. 14-26
Int'l Roaming Set	NW Search Mode	—	Auto	P. 14-20
	PLMN Setting		—	
	Display Operator Name		Display OFF	
Optional Services	Caller ID Notification	17	ON	P. 3-22
	Voice Mail/Divert	—	—	P. 3-14, P. 3-15, P. 3-20
	Call Waiting	—	—	P. 3-20
	Call Barring	—	—	P. 3-21
Other Settings	Charge Sound	—	ON	P. 14-14
	Battery Level	71	—	P. 1-22
	Network Status	—	—	
	Character Input Set	35	Input Mode: 5-touch, Prediction: ON, T9 Change Mode: T9 Kanji Change Mode, CHG Input Size: Standard, Auto Cursor: Normal	P. 14-38
	Volume Restriction	—	ON	P. 14-14



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Other Settings	Reset Settings	23	—	P. 14-42
	Initialize	—	—	
	Software Update	—	—	P. 15-4

●PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Home	—	—	—	P. 6-5
Bookmark	—	—	—	P. 6-11
History	—	—	—	P. 6-6
Enter URL	—	—	—	
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3
PC Site Brw. Settings	Warning Messages	—	ON	P. 14-26
	Scroll	—	Single Line	P. 14-25
	Display Mode Settings	—	PC Screen: 100%, Small Screen: Standard	P. 14-26
	Downloads	—	Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON	P. 14-25
	Memory Manager	—	—	
	Security	—	Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: ON	
	Check PC Site Brw. Set.	—	—	
	Initialized Browser	—	—	
	Reset PC Site Brw. Set.	—	—	



●Settings for S! Quick News under Entertainment

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Auto Refresh	S! Quick News	—	OFF	P. 10-9
	General	—	OFF	
	Special	—	ON	
Standby Settings	Standby Disp. Set.	—	ON	P. 14-36
	Speed Settings	—	Normal	
	Unread & Read Set.	—	Unread & Read	
Set Image Disp.	—	—	ON	
Del. Quick News	—	—	—	

●Key Illumination for Illumination under Settings

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Power ON	Set Pattern	—	ON	P. 14-39
	Set Color	—	Color 7	
Power OFF	Set Pattern	—	ON	
	Set Color	—	Color 7	
Talking Start	Set Pattern	—	Ibuki	
	Set Color	—	Color 7	
Emotion	—	—	ON (Always)	
Alarm	Set Pattern	—	Kodou	
	Set Color	—	Color 1	
Snooze	Set Pattern	—	ON	
	Set Color	—	Color 2	



Menu List

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Ir Exchanging	Set Pattern	—	ON	P. 14-39
	Set Color	—	Color 5	
IC Exchanging	Set Pattern	—	ON	
	Set Color	—	Color 3	
Charge Starting	Set Pattern	—	ON	
	Set Color	—	Color 5	
Open	Set Pattern	—	Differs with handset color.	
	Set Color	—	Differs with handset color.	
Close	Set Pattern	—	Differs with handset color.	
	Set Color	—	Differs with handset color.	



Main Specifications

Model		830N
Dimensions (H x W x D)		107 x 49 x 13.9 mm
Weight		Approx. 113 g
Continuous Standby Time		Approx. 570 hrs
Continuous Talk Time		Voice Call: Approx. 220 min. Video Call: Approx. 110 min.
Charging Time		Max. 120 min.
Display	Type	Display: TFT 262,144 colors
	Size	Display: Approx. 3.0 inches
	Pixels	Display: 409,920 pixels (480 x 854 dots)
Camera	Imaging device	CMOS
	Lens size	1/4 inch
	Effective pixels	Approx. 3.2 million pixels
	Recording pixels	Approx. 3.14 million pixels
	Zoom (digital)	Up to approx. 15 x
	Still images	Up to approx. 1,000 files ¹

Camera	Still images for continuous shooting	5 to 20 files ²
	Still image file format	JPEG
	Video recording time	Handset: Up to approx. 272 sec. ³ microSD™ memory card (64 MB): Up to approx. 120 min. ³
	Video file format	MP4
TV	Continuous watching time	Approx. 170 min.
	Maximum recording time	Approx. 600 min. ⁴
Storage Capacity	Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full®	Approx. 180.0 MB ⁵

- 1 In case the image size is Sub QCIF (128 x 96) and the image quality is set to ***Fine*** (the file size is 10 KB).
- 2 Varies depending on the image size.
- 3 Time for recording when recorded in the following conditions:

	Handset	microSD™ memory card
Image size	Sub QCIF (128 x 96)	
Image quality	Normal	
File size	2MB	Long Time
Recording type	Normal	

- 4 Approximate time when recorded on a 2-GB microSD™ memory card.
- 5 Shared with images, videos and saved pages.



Handset Materials

Where Used		Material/Finish
Outer casing	Display surface	PC resin + stainless plating, acrylic UV-cured coating
	Keypad surface	
Display back		SUS plating, electrodeposited coating
Keysheet center confirmation button		PC resin, vapor deposition + acrylic UV-cured coating
Battery compartment	Screws	Iron, nickel plating
	Cover	PC resin, acrylic UV-cured coating
	Terminals	Copper alloy, gold plating
Battery (terminals)		Epoxy resin (glass epoxy), gold plating



Maximum Number of Storable Items

Item		Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Phone Book entries		1,000 ¹	—
Schedule	Events	2,500	—
To Do List	Tasks	100	—
Mail	Received messages	1,000 ^{2 3 4}	1,000 ²
	Sent messages	400 ^{2 3 4}	200
	Draft messages	20 ²	—
Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai	100 ⁵	—
	PC Site Browser	100 ⁵	—
Saved Pages		100 ²	50
S! Appli		100 ²	—
Still images		1,000 ^{2 4}	—
Videos		100 ^{2 5}	—
Widget		100 ²	—
Melodies		200 ²	—
Songs		100 ²	—

Item	Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Template (Graphic Mail)	45 ⁶	—
Answering Machine	Voice calls: 5 (20 sec. each) Video calls: 2 (20 sec. each)	—
Voice Memo	1 (20 sec.)	—
Dialed Calls	30	—
Received Calls	30	—
Speed Dial	10 (Entry Number 000-009)	—

- 1 Up to 50 entries can be saved on USIM Card.
- 2 The actual number that can be saved or protected may be less depending on the data size.
- 3 An additional 10 received and sent SMS messages can be saved on USIM Card.
- 4 Up to 100 additional messages/files can be saved in Secret Folders.
- 5 Up to 10 additional files can be saved in Secret Folder.
- 6 Includes data stored by default.



Memory Card Folders & Files

Folder				File
DCIM	XXXNECDT			Still images captured with handset camera
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Mail	Inbox	Backup data of Inbox
			Sent Messages	Backup data of Outbox
			Drafts	Backup data of Draft
		Utility	Calendar	Backup data of Schedule
			Contacts	Backup data of Phone Book
			Memo	Backup data of Text Memo
			Rights	Backup file of content keys
			Tasks	Backup file of To Do List
		My Items	Book	Book files
			Widget	Widget files
			Bookmarks	Backup file of Bookmarks
			Flash(R)	Flash® files
			Games and More	S! Appli files
			Music	Songs
			Pictograms	My Pictograms
			Pictures	Still images
			Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies



Specifications

Folder				File
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	My Items	Videos	Videos
			WMAudio	WMA files
		NE_Folder		Other files
SD_VIDEO	MGR_INFO			TV Program recording management file
	PRGXXX			TV Program recording files



Number

2-touch Mode	2-18
3D Display Setting	14-8
5-touch Mode	2-14

A

Access Files	12-3
Access Handset Functions	2-2
Access the Internet	
From Bookmarks	6-11
From Data Broadcasts	8-8
From Entered URL Record	6-13
From Scanned Data	11-27
From TV Links	8-15
From URL in Text	5-24
From Web Page	6-15
Multi Window	6-8
PC Site Browser	6-5
Use Access History	6-3
Use URL History	6-6
Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
Account Details	1-22
Add Folder	
Bookmark	6-17
Data Folder	12-10
Messages	5-23
After Sales Service	15-51

Alarm	11-16
Cancel	11-17
Edit	11-26
Release All	11-26
Set	11-16
Alarm Activation Operations	11-17
Alarm Notification Operations	
Schedule	11-9
To Do List	11-11
Answer Incoming (Slide-Style) ...	14-12
Answer Setting	14-12
Answer Video Calls	3-8
Answer Voice Calls	3-4
Answer Voice Calls (Bluetooth®)	13-7
Answering Machine	3-4
Activate When Call Arrives	3-5
Play/Delete Messages	3-5, 3-18
Settings	3-4
Any Key Answer	14-12
Attach to Mail	
Bookmark	6-17
Delete Attached Files	5-18
Files	5-3
Shot Still Image/Video	5-18, 7-14
Audio service (Bluetooth®)	13-5
Authentication Password	13-3
Auto Answer Setting	14-15

Auto Power On/Off	14-3
Auto Redial as Voice	14-19
Auto Reset Total Cost	14-18
Auto save Set (Camera)	14-32
Auto Timer	7-11
Auto Voice Memo	14-18
Auto-sort	5-12

B

Backlight	14-7
Bar Code Reader	11-18
Check Scanned Data	11-19
Delete Scanned Data	11-28
Scan	11-18
Basic Key Operations	1-3
Battery	1-14
Charge	1-14, 1-17
Check Battery Level	1-22
Installation	1-14
Blog/Mail Member	5-4
Add Addresses	5-4
Blog Upload Destination	5-4
Delete Addresses	5-18
Edit Address	5-18
Specify Recipients	5-16
Bluetooth®	13-5
Add New Device	13-6
Connecting	13-6



Index

Delete Added Device	13-11	Call Barring	3-21	Viewfinders	7-3
Device List	13-7	Call Forward	3-14	Voice Mode	7-8
Discontinue	13-8	Call Rejection	3-16	Capture Still Images	7-5
Playing Music	13-8	Call Time/Charge	3-11	Center Access Code	1-21
Search	13-6	Call Waiting	3-20	Certificate	6-14
Settings	14-42	Caller ID	3-16, 3-22	Chance Capture	7-8
Talk	13-7	Camera	7-2	Change	
Booked Programs	8-12	Add Frames	7-11	Entry Number	2-33
Change Order	8-17	AFchange	7-13	Font Size (Message Text)	5-25
Delete	8-18	Auto Timer	7-11	Graphic Mail Effects	5-18
Edit	8-17	Blog Upload	7-13	Icon Image	2-30
Bookmarks	6-11	Brightness	7-13	Network Password	3-21
Access Page	6-11	Camera Modes	7-13	PIN1/PIN2	4-2
Add Folder	6-17	Capture Still Images	7-5	Security Code	1-21
Delete	6-18	Chance Capture	7-8	Set To, Cc or Bcc	5-16
Delete Folder	6-18	Continuous Shooting	7-10	Change Skin	14-33
Edit URL	6-17	Effect	7-13	Channel List	14-27
Move	6-17	Image Size	7-13	Delete a Channel	14-27
Number of Bookmarks	6-17	Memory Info	7-13	Remote Control Numbers	14-27
Save	6-11	Photo Mode	7-13	Save Stations of a Different Area	8-14
Save Scanned URL	11-27	Photo Viewfinder		Switch	8-14
Send by Mail	6-17	(Landscape View)	7-5	Channel Settings	8-5
Sort Folder	6-17	Record Videos	7-7	Automatic	8-14
Books	10-8	Send Images/Videos by Mail	7-14	Reset	14-30
BookSurfing®	10-8	Settings	14-31	Character Stamp	12-9
		Shake Correction	7-13	Charge Battery	1-14
		Video Viewfinder		AC Charger	1-17
		(Landscape View)	7-7	Charge Sound	14-14
Calculator	11-15				

C



Index

Save	5-17
Specify Blog/Mail Member List	
Recipients	5-16
To, Cc or Bcc	5-16
Continuous Shooting	7-10
Cookie Settings	14-25
Copy	
Between Handset & Memory	
Card	12-13
Event	11-24
Phone Book Entries	2-27, 2-35
SMS Messages	5-22
Text	2-17
Customer Service	15-52

D

Memory Info	12-18
Move Files	12-10
Open Files	12-3
Original Animation	12-5
Playlist (Melody)	12-6
Playlist (Video)	12-6
Ringtone	12-15
Secret Folders	4-8
Stand-by Display	12-15
Delete Cache	14-25
Delete Cookies	14-25
Delivery Report (S! Mail)	14-21
Desktop Icons	2-5
Change Order	2-30
CHG Icon Image	2-30
Delete Desktop Icons	2-30
Reset	2-30
Show/Hide	2-30
Desktop Info.	2-5
Dial	
Bluetooth®	13-7
From Dialed Calls	3-10
From Phone Book	2-23
From Received Calls	3-10
From Redial	3-10
From Scanned Data	11-27
From Tomo-Den	3-12
From Web Page	6-15



Global Roaming	3-13
International Calls	3-3
Phone Number in Message Text ...	5-24
Video Calls	3-7
Voice Calls	3-3
Dial Lock	4-3
Dialed Calls	3-10
Dictionaries	2-17
Disp. Call/Receive No.	14-14
Disp. Phone Book Image	14-11
Display Design	14-5
Display Indicators	1-7
Display Light (TV)	14-28
Display Missed Call (Slide-Style)	14-11
Display Mode Settings	14-26
Display on Charge	14-6
Display Operator Name	14-20
Display Setting	14-4
DL Dictionary	2-18
Delete	2-33
Download	
Books	10-8
Music	9-4
S! Appli	9-8
Templates (Graphic Mail)	5-19
Widgets	10-3
Downloads	14-25

DPOF setting	12-14
--------------------	-------

E

ECO mode	1-23
Edit	
Address (Blog/Mail Member)	5-18
Alarm Settings	11-26
Blog/Mail Member List Name	5-18
Event	11-24
File Name (Data Folder)	12-18
Folder Name (Bookmark)	6-17
Folder Name (Data Folder)	12-17
Folder Name (Messages)	5-23
Folder Name (Templates)	2-32
Own Dictionary	2-32
Phone Book Entry	2-35
Readings in T9 Input Mode	2-19
Still Images	12-8
Template (Graphic Mail)	5-19
Templates	
(Common Phrases)	2-17, 2-32
Text	2-16
Text Memo	11-13
URL (Bookmark)	6-17
Videos	12-9
View Timer Settings	8-17
Edit Still Images	12-8
Brightness	12-16

Change Size	12-17
Character Stamp	12-9
Correct Backlight	12-17
Frame	12-8
Marker Stamp	12-8
Refresh Skin Tone	12-17
Retouch	12-16
Rotate	12-16
Trim away	12-9
Edit Videos	12-9
Emission OFF Mode	4-7
Emotion/Keyword	14-22
Emotion-Expressing Mail	5-7
Enter URL	6-3, 6-6
Delete Records	6-14
External Device Port	1-2

F

FeliCa Mark	1-2
IC Card Authentication	4-6
IC Card Illumination	14-41
Osaifu-Keitai®	11-2
File Size	14-31
Flash Sound Effect	14-26
Flicker	14-31
Font	14-5
Font Size (Internet)	14-26
Font Size (Mail)	14-23



Index

Font Size (S! Info Channel)	14-37
Format Memory Card	12-12
Forward (Message)	5-24
Forwarding Image (Phone Book)	14-16
Frame	7-11, 12-8

G

Global Roaming	3-13
Call Japan and Other Countries	3-13
Call within the Same Country	3-13
Settings	14-20
Graphic Mail	
Cancel Effects	5-19
Create	5-4
Create Automatically	5-19
Create from a Template	5-19
Delete Templates	5-19
Edit a Template	5-19
Save Template	5-19
Group Calling	3-20
Group Setting (Phone Book)	14-16
Ring Tone/Image	2-25

H

Handset Parts	1-2
Handsfree	3-17
Handsfree (Bluetooth®)	13-5

Hands-free Switch (Video Call) ..	14-19
Header/Signature	14-21, 14-23
Headset SW to Dial	14-15
Headset Usage Setting	14-15
History	6-3, 6-6
Delete	6-13
Holidays	11-9
Hyper Clear Voice	3-17

I

IC Card Authentication	4-6
IC Card Lock	11-4
Icon Always Show	14-28
Icons Setting	14-10
Illumination	14-11
Image	
Capture	7-5
Edit	12-8
Open Image File	12-3
Incoming Call Image	14-11
Incoming Message Image	14-11
Infrared	13-2
Authentication Password	13-3
Receive All	13-4
Receive One File	13-3
Send All Ir Data	13-3
Send One File	13-3
Initial Setup	1-18

Initialize	
Handset	14-42
Memory Status (Internet)	14-25
Initialized Browser	14-25
Input Mode	14-38
Insertion & Removal	
Battery	1-14
Memory Card	12-11
USIM Card	1-12
International Calls	3-3
Enter “ + ”	3-16
Internet	6-2
Access History	6-3
Connect	6-3, 6-5
Enter URL	6-3
Home	6-13
Page Operations	6-8
Quick Search	6-15
Reload	6-14
Send URL by Mail	6-15
Settings	14-25
Int'l Dial Assistance	14-17

J

JAN Code	11-18
----------------	-------

K

Key Backlight	14-41
---------------------	-------



Key Illumination	1-8
Settings	14-39
Key/Touch Sensor	14-38
Keypad Lock	4-4

L

Language (言語選択)	14-6
Life History Viewer	11-6
Lock	
Dial Lock	4-3
IC Card Lock	11-4
Keypad Lock	4-4
Original Lock	4-3
Remote Lock	11-4

M

Mail	5-2
Add Folder	5-23
Auto-sort	5-12
Delete	5-22
Delete All Reports	5-22
Delete Attached Files	5-22
Delete Folder	5-23
Delete Read	5-22
Draft	5-24
Edit	5-24
Filter	5-25
Folder Lock	5-13

Forward	5-24
Mail Box Lock	5-13
Mail Setting	14-21
Mail Windows	5-11
Message Storage Locations	5-10
Move	5-21
Move to Trash Box	5-21
No. of Messages	5-23
Protect	5-21
Search Mail	5-25
Secret Folders	5-13
Sort	5-25
Sort Folder	5-23

Mail List Disp.	14-23
----------------------	-------

Mail Ring Time	14-10
----------------------	-------

Mail Setting	14-21
--------------------	-------

Manner Mode	1-20
-------------------	------

Manner Mode Set	14-13
Manner Release Time	14-13
Manner Start Time	14-13
Original	14-13

Manufacture Number	14-25
--------------------------	-------

Marker Stamp	12-8
--------------------	------

Melody Playback	
-----------------------	--

Playlist	12-6
Set Repeat Play	12-16

Memory Card	12-11
-------------------	-------

Access Data	12-12
-------------------	-------

Check & Repair	12-18
Check Available Memory Space ..	12-18
Check microSD	12-18
Copy Data from Handset	12-13
Copy Data to Handset	12-13
Delete Data	12-18
DPOF setting	12-14
Folders & Files	15-37
Format	12-12
Insert & Remove	12-11
Transfer WMA Data	9-4

Memory Space (Memory info)

Camera	7-13
Data Folder	12-18
Memory Card	12-18
Music	9-11
Number of Saved Pages	6-18
SI Appli	9-13
Server Mail Memory	5-21

Menu Display Set	14-8
------------------------	------

Menu List	15-19
-----------------	-------

Message Download	14-22
------------------------	-------

Missed Calls	3-11
--------------------	------

Mobile Widget	10-2
---------------------	------

Change Position of widgets	10-9
Delete from Desktop Page	10-9
Downloading Contents	10-3
Paste Contents	10-4



Place widgets in Foreground or Background	10-9
Settings	14-35
Toggle Page	10-3
Update Display	10-9
Use	10-2

Move

Bookmarks	6-17
Files	12-10
Messages	5-21

Multitask

Activate Another Function	2-10
Combinations	15-2
Toggle Functions	2-11

Music Player

Playback Windows	9-3
Settings	14-33

My Phone Number

N

Network Password

Network Status

Noise Reduction

Notify Caller ID

Number of Entries

Bookmarks	6-17
Events	11-24
Phone Book Entries	2-35

Saved Messages

NW Search Mode

O

One Seg Digital TV

Open Inbox Messages

Open New Messages

Optional Services

Original Animation

Original Lock

Customize

Settings

Original Manner Mode

Original Menu

Osaifu-Keitai®

Activate Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli

Restrict Use

Settings

Use

Own Dictionary

Delete

Edit

P

Panoramic Shooting

Pause Dial

PC Connection

Access Memory Card Data

Packet Transmission

USB Mode Setting

PC Site Browser

Change Disp. Mode

Check PC Site Brw. Set

Initialize

Windows

Phone Book

Access Entries from Other

Functions

Change Entry Number

Change Index Tab

Check Number of Entries

Copy

Copy to USIM Card

Create Entries

Create Entries from Other

Functions

Delete Entries

Delete Items

Dial

Edit an Entry

Group Setting

Restrictions

Ring Tone/Image

S! Addressbook Back-up

Save from Scanned Data



Search	2-23
Set Incoming Image	2-22
Set Preferred Search Method	14-16
Set Secret	2-26
Photo Viewfinder	
(Landscape View)	7-5
PIN Lock & Cancellation	1-11
PIN1/PIN2	1-11
Change PIN1/PIN2	4-2
PIN1 Code Entry Set	4-2
Place Calls on Hold	3-16
Play	
Answering Machine	3-5
Music	9-5
Playlist	9-7
Voice Announce	14-15
Voice Mail	3-15
Playlist (Songs)	9-6
Add Music	9-11
Cancel Playlist Songs	9-12
Create	9-6
Delete	9-12
Play	9-7
Sort Playlist	9-12
Power On/Off	1-18
Prefix Numbers	3-16
Prefix Setting	14-17
Privacy Angle	14-6

Program Guide	8-9
----------------------------	-----

Q

QR Code	11-18
Quality Alarm	14-18
Quality Setting (Camera)	14-31
Quick Album	12-4
Quick Info Setting	14-6
Quick Menu	2-3
Play Music	9-6
Record Voice Only	7-9
Shoot Still Images	7-5
Shoot Videos	7-7
Watch TV	8-7
Quick Search	6-15, 11-25
Quick Silent	14-12

R

Read Out Message	5-20
Read Out Setting	14-22
Receive & Open Messages	5-7
Manually Retrieve Messages	5-20
Open Inbox Messages	5-7
Open New Messages	5-7
Open New Messages	
(Slide-Style)	14-11
Read Out Message	5-20
Reply	5-8

Retrieve Complete S! Mail	5-20
Save Attachments	5-14
Use Mail List	5-8
Received Calls	3-10
Receiving Setting	14-22
Reconnect Signal	14-18
Record Sound	7-8, 11-14
Sound without Video	
(Voice Mode)	7-8
Voice Announce	14-15
Record Timer	8-12
Record Videos	7-7
Movie Type Set	7-13
Record Videos	
(Landscape View)	7-7
Redial	3-10
Register S! Quick News	
Contents	10-5
Reject Calls w/o Caller ID	4-7
Reject Unknown	4-7
Reload Page	6-14
Data Broadcasts	8-15
Remote Control Numbers	14-27
Reply to Messages	5-8
Reset	
Blog/Mail Member List Name	5-18
Channel Settings	14-30



Confirmation Window (Data Broadcasts)	14-29	Delete Synchronize Log	2-36	S! Quick News	10-5
Desktop Icons	2-30	Synchronization Type	2-28	Saved Pages	6-11
Folder Name (Common Phrases) ..	2-32	Use	2-28	Tasks	11-11
Handset	14-42	S! Appli	9-8	Text Memos	11-13
Holidays	11-24	Activate	9-9	Tomo-Den	3-12
Internet Settings	14-25	Delete	9-13	TV Links	8-15
Mail Settings	14-23	Download	9-8	Saved Pages	6-11
My Phone Number	1-22	Settings	14-33	Delete	6-18
Original Menu	14-9	S! Info Channel	10-6	No. of Pages	6-18
PC Site Browser Settings	14-25	Check Latest Information	10-6	Open	6-11
S! Appli Settings	14-34	Check Updated Information	10-5	Protect	6-18
SMS Center Selection	14-24	Get Latest Contents	10-10	Save	6-11
Total Call Cost	3-19	Manually Update	10-10	Schedule (Events)	11-8
Total Call Time	3-19	Save File	10-10	Add Holidays	11-9
TV Settings	14-30	Settings	14-37	Check	11-9
Yahoo! Keitai Settings	14-25	Weather Indicators	10-6	Copy	11-24
Reset PC Site Brw. Set	14-25	S! Quick News	10-9	Delete	11-10, 11-24
Reset Settings	14-42	Auto Refresh	10-9	Edit	11-24
Reset Storage Area (TV)	14-30	Delete Registered News	10-9	No. of Schedules	11-24
Retrieve New	5-20	Register News	10-5	Save	11-8
Ring Volume	14-10	Save	11-25	Save a Text Memo to Schedule ...	11-25
		Blog/Mail Member List	5-4	Windows	11-8
		Bluetooth®	13-6	Script Settings	14-25
		Bookmarks	6-11	Scroll (Internet)	14-25
		Events	11-8	Scroll (Mail)	14-23
		Holidays	11-9	Scroll (Touch Sensor Setting)	14-39
		Own Dictionary	2-17	Search	5-25
		Phone Book Entries	2-22	Messages in a Folder	5-25

S

S! Addressbook Back-up	2-28
Auto Synchronize	14-16
Check Settings	14-16
Check Synchronize Log	2-28



Phone Book	2-23	Set Sub Clock	14-2	Memory Info	9-11
Songs	9-11	Setting When Open	14-12	Play	9-5
Secret Data		Answer Incoming	14-12	Play Streaming	6-9
Phone Book Entries	2-26	Display Missed Call	14-11	Repeat Setting	9-10
Schedule	11-24	Display New Mail	14-11	Resume Play	9-10
Secret Data Only Mode	4-8	Shoot Framed Images	7-11	Search	9-11
Secret Folders	4-8	Shooting		Set as Ringtone	9-11
Secret Mode	4-8	Auto Timer	7-11	Sort	9-11
Secure Remote Lock	4-5	Blog Upload	7-13	Transfer From PC	9-4
Security Code	1-21	Continuous Shooting	7-10	Sort (Change Order)	
Select Image (Video Call)	14-19	Frame	7-11	Booked Programs	8-17
Select Microphone	14-15	Panoramic	7-11	Desktop Icons	2-30
Select to Save (Camera)	14-32	Record Videos (Landscape View)	7-7	Files	12-15
Send Location Info	14-26	Still Images	7-5	Folders (Bookmark)	6-17
Send Messages	5-3	Still Images (Landscape View)	7-5	Folders (Mail)	5-23
Check Delivery	5-17	Videos	7-7	Messages	5-25
Send Referer	14-25	Shutter Sound	14-31	Original Menu Items	14-9
Server Mail	5-8	Simple Menu	2-30	Playlist Songs	9-12
Delete	5-21	Slide Sound Setting	14-14	Songs	9-11
Forward	5-21	SMS		Tasks	11-25
Mail List	5-8, 5-20	Receive	5-7	Specifications	15-34
Set Hold Tone	14-18	Send	5-5	Start Attachment (auto)	14-23
Set Image Disp. (Video Player) ...	14-33	SMS Center Selection	14-24	Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable .. x	
Set Main Time	14-2	SMS Settings	14-21	Storage Location (Camera)	14-32
Set Max Cost Limit	14-19	Software Update	15-4	Strap Eyelet	1-2
Set Mute Seconds	4-7	Songs		Streaming	6-9
Set Ringtone	14-10	Bluetooth®	13-8	Style Mode Settings	14-3
From Data Folder	12-15	Download	9-4	Sub-address Setting	14-17



Subtitles 14-28

T

T9 Change Mode 14-38

T9 Input Mode 2-18

Templates (Common Phrases)

Delete 2-32

Edit 2-17, 2-32

Insert 2-16

Text Entry 2-12

2-touch Mode 2-18

5-touch Mode 2-14

Alphanumerics, Numbers &

Katakana 2-16

Character Entry Modes 2-13

Common Phrases (Templates) 2-16

Copy 2-17

Correction 2-16

Cut 2-17

Dakuten (゛) & Handakuten (゜) 2-15

Deletion 2-16

Emoticons 2-16

Key Assignments 15-10

Kuten Code List 15-13

Kuten Codes 2-32

Line Feed 2-31

Lower Case 2-15

Lower Case & Upper Case 2-31

Overwrite & Insert Modes 2-31

Paste 2-17

Pictographs 2-15

Quote Data 2-32

Settings 14-38

Single-byte & Double-byte 2-31

Space 2-31

Split Windows 2-13

Symbols 2-15

T9 Input Mode 2-18

Text Entry Window 2-12

Text Input Methods 2-13

Use Dictionary 2-31

Word Prediction 2-14

Text Memo 11-13

Check Information 11-25

Delete 11-13

Edit 11-13

Save 11-13

Save from Scanned Data 11-27

Sort 11-25

Text Reader 11-20

Check Scanned Text 11-22

Delete Scanned Data 11-28

Edit Scanned Text 11-26

Scan 11-21

Scan Modes 11-20

Text Scanning Window 11-20

To Do List (Tasks) 11-11

Change Order 11-25

Check 11-12

Delete 11-12, 11-25

Save 11-11

Set Status 11-25

To, Cc or Bcc 5-16

Tomo-Den 3-12

Cancel Entries 3-19

Dial 3-12

Save Entries 3-12

Send Messages 3-12

Touch Sensor 1-2

Basic Operations 1-6

Quick Menu 2-3

Scroll 14-39

Settings 14-38

Trim away (Still Image) 12-9

Troubleshooting 15-6

TV 8-2

Brightness 8-14

Channel Settings 8-5

Data Broadcasts 8-8

Program Guide 8-9

Program Info 8-14

Record Timer 8-12

Settings 14-27

TV Antenna 1-2



View Timer	8-12
Watch	8-6
Watch (Landscape View)	8-7
Windows	8-4
TV Link	
Delete	8-16
No. of TV Links	8-15
Save	8-15
Show Details	8-15
TV Power Saving	14-28

U

Update	
Data Broadcast	8-15
Life History Viewer	11-23
S! Quick News List	10-9
Server Mail List	5-8, 5-20
Web Page	6-14
URL History	6-6
Delete	6-13
USB Mode Setting	13-9
USIM Card	1-10
Copy Phone Book Entries	2-27, 2-35
Copy SMS Messages	5-22
Delete Phone Book Entries	2-36
Delete SMS Messages	5-22
Insertion & Removal	1-12
PINs	1-11

V

Vibrator	14-11
Video Call	3-7
Brightness	3-17
Color Mode Set	3-18
Hyper Clear Voice	3-17
Settings	14-19
Visual Prefer.	3-17
White Balance	3-17
Windows	3-7
Videos	12-2
Streaming	6-9
View Timer	8-12
Edit	8-17
Viewer Settings	14-6
Voice Announce	14-15
Voice Call	3-3
Hyper Clear Voice	3-17
Send Touch Tones	3-17
Voice Mail	3-15
Missed Call Notification	3-15
Play Messages	3-15
Voice Memo	11-14
Auto Voice Memo	14-18
Record the Other Party's Voice ..	11-14
Record Your Voice	11-14

W

Wallpaper (Stand-by Display)	14-4
Image in Data Folder	12-15
Recorded Video	7-14
Shot Still Image	7-14
Video in Data Folder	12-15
Warning Messages	14-26
Warranty	15-51
Weather Indicators	10-6
Manual Update	10-10
Settings	14-37
Subscribe for Service	10-6
White Balance	14-31
Wireless Handset	13-5
Word Prediction	2-14, 14-38

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
Initialize	14-25
Switch to PC	6-13



Warranty

A warranty card is included with 830N.

- Check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled correctly.
- Read the card carefully and store it in a safe place.
- See the card for the warranty period.

Note

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages incurred by you or third parties as a result of losing opportunities to make calls, etc. due to a failure or malfunction of this product.

After Sales Service

Refer to “Troubleshooting” (P. 15-6) before submitting your handset for repair.

If problems still persist, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance of your area (P. 15-52), or consult with your nearest SoftBank shop.

Provide us with detailed information of your problems.

- Repair within the warranty period is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.
- Repair after the warranty period is carried out if possible, and the owner of handset is responsible for any repair costs.

Note

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages incurred by you or third parties as a result of losing opportunities to make calls, etc. due to a failure, error or malfunction of this product.
- Data and settings you saved may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of handset. It is recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data (e.g. Phone Book entries, image and sound files). SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may constitute a violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

Tip

- For information on after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-52).



Customer Service

If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (Make sure to dial the correct number. International charges will apply.)

■ Call These Numbers Toll Free from Landlines

Subscription Area	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	 0088-250-113

SoftBank 830N User Guide

April 2009, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

* For additional information,
please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 830N

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation

MDT-000112-EAA0